

2922-B-06-301-001/FP-001 vol.1



CFP 304-2. { Combined with  
- CFP 301-3 } this file

# CLOSED VOLUME VOLUME COMPLET

DATED FROM  
À COMPTER DU

690114

TO  
JUSQU'AU

800330

**AFFIX TO TOP OF FILE - À METTRE SUR LE DOSSIER**

**DO NOT ADD ANY MORE PAPERS - NE PAS AJOUTER DE DOCUMENTS**

**FOR SUBSEQUENT CORRESPONDENCE SEE - POUR CORRESPONDANCE ULTÉRIEURE VOIR**

FILE NO. - DOSSIER N°

2922-B-0g-301-001/FP-001

VOLUME

2

PA → 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLA) PA  
~~2910-CFP 303(I)~~  
~~2910-CFP 283~~

National Defence Headquarters  
101 Colonel By Drive  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0K2  
28 March, 1980

Distribution List

PROPOSED CHANGES TO  
CFPs 283, 301(1), and 303(1)

- References: A. TAG 2910-1 (Plans) 17 Mar 80  
B. 3189-3-6 (AST) 1 Aug 79 (Air Support Study)  
C. AIRCOM IPR 008 172230Z JAN 80

1. Although Reference A requested information addressees to withhold final staffing pending review by Air Command, I have certain comments that, in my opinion, should be considered during the review.

2. The allocation of Attack Helicopter (AH) Squadrons, and possibly Ambulance Squadrons, to Corps Tactical Helicopter Groups, with the note that they "may also be assigned to wings in support of division operations" is considered unacceptable for the following reasons:

- a. Paragraph 1225 of the Air Support Study, Reference B, states that "Aviation resources are grouped at the lowest formation or unit that can reasonably expect to have a continuous requirement for those resources and where maintenance and support resources can be made available". Paragraph 2208 of Reference B indicates that both corps and divisions require, inter alia, constant AH support. Both Air Command and 10TAG have agreed previously to the Air Support Study;
- b. If the AHs are centralized at corps, the range and response time to the area where they will be required to operate are both increased, resulting in a shorter "on station" time and a delay in the required response; and
- c. If the AHs are centralized at corps, the command and control system necessary to employ them correctly is unlikely to be located at division level. Whatever arrangements are made for command and control of the AHs at division level are not likely to be as satisfactory as they

.../2

would be if the AHs are permanently allotted to divisions, because they will not have been exercised as frequently or with the same degree of co-operation and co-ordination.

3. The above considerations apply to both AH Squadrons and Ambulance Squadrons. It might, however, be marginally acceptable to centralize the AH and Ambulance Squadrons at Corps, providing that note 6 to the Tactical Helicopter Group is amended to read "Squadrons will be 'ear marked' for assignment to specific wings..." In this case, however, the problem of command and control, para 2c, would still pertain.

4. It might possibly be acceptable to centralize the MTH Squadrons at Corps, providing that their response time is not affected adversely by this centralization. In this case also, however, the problem of command and control would again pertain.

5. The title of the last page of Reference A should be amended to read "Attack Helicopter Squadron". LOHs and UTHs can be "armed helicopters". The present title is misleading.

6. It should be noted that changes to the proposed organizations, as suggested herein, will require corresponding changes to the "Comments/Proposed Amendments" column of the 10TAG submission and to the subsequent Tactical Helicopter Wing organizational chart.

7. Enclosed as an example is an organization chart developed as a result of previous discussions with Air Command and 10TAG (Reference C refers). The chart will be submitted to the Sixth Meeting of the Combat Development Committee, 28 April - 2 May, 1980, for approval.

8. It is requested that the above comments be considered during the review of Reference A at Air Command Headquarters.

*OSB*

P.E. Argue  
Colonel  
Director Land Aviation  
for Chief of the Defence Staff

Enclosure

DISTRIBUTION LIST...Page 3

.../3

DISTRIBUTION LIST

Action

External

Air Command  
Westwin, Man  
R2R OTO  
Attention: DCOS IPR

Internal

NDHQ: DLP

Information

External

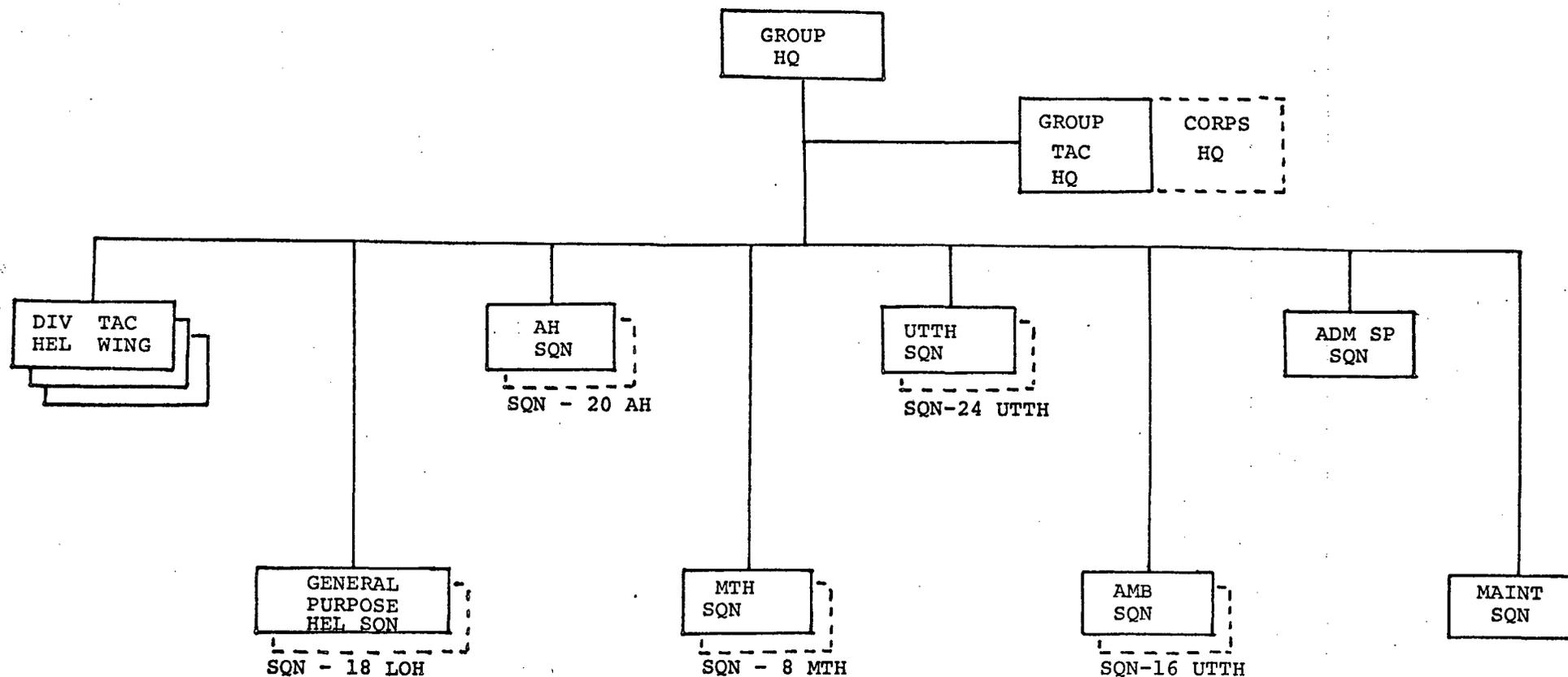
Air Command  
Westwin, Man  
R2R OTO  
Attention: SSO Tac Hel

10 Tactical Air Group  
St Hubert, PQ  
J3Y 5T4  
Attention: SSO Plans

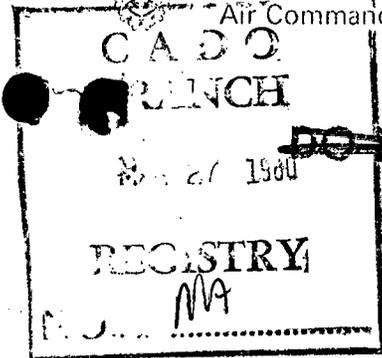
D.E. STOVEL/MAJ/2-6040/cf

TACTICAL AVIATION

CORPS LEVEL TACTICAL HELICOPTER GROUP ( COMMANDING 3 DIVISIONS)



- Notes:
1. Number and composition of squadrons vary, therefore no summary of aircraft is shown.
  2. The squadrons shown are corps resources for support of corps troops and allocation to divisions for specific operations as required.
  3. Div Tac Hel Wing resources can be temporarily centralized under Gp HQ or reallocated for specific operations.



~~DO NOT PA ON FILE~~

2910-CFP 301 (DCOS IPR)

Air Command Headquarters  
Westwin, Man  
R2R OTO

NDRMS/SGDDN 3-3-2

24 Mar 80

Referred to  
Transmis à

DLA

Distribution List

①

PROPOSED AMENDMENT TO CFP 301(1)

References: A. AIRCOM 2910-CFP 301 (DCOS IPR) 19 Dec 79  
B. 10 TAG 2910-1 (PLANS) 17 Mar 80

File No. 2910-CFP 301-1  
Dossier No.

MAR 26 1980

Charged to/chargé à  
2910 - CFP - 301 - 1  
2910 - CFP 283 TD 0080

1. Air Command Headquarters submitted proposed amendments to the 1st draft of CFP 301(1) - Formations in Battle - at reference A. Subsequently, HQ 10 TAG submitted a further amendment at reference B. This submission has been reviewed by Air Command Headquarters and is accepted with one change:

Serial 7. Line 5 of the proposed amendment to read:  
"resources permit, attack (AH), ~~medical~~ transport (MTH) and ambulance...".  
*medium*

Reference B, as amended, is now approved as the Air Command proposed amendment and replaces reference A.

2. It is requested that the final draft of CFP 301(1) is submitted to Air Command Headquarters for approval of the sections dealing with air doctrine before CFP publication action is undertaken.

D.G. McBride  
Colonel  
for Commander

DISTRIBUTION LIST

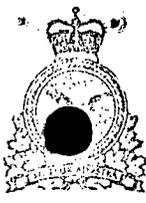
| <u>Action</u> | <u>Information</u>   |
|---------------|--|
| NDHQ/DLP      | NDHQ/DLA ✓<br>FMCHQ/DCOS CD<br>HQ 10 TAG/SSO PLANS<br>CFCS/SSOs LAND AND AIR (2)<br>CLFCS/DCOMDT |

② NDRMS,  
Please PA on  
2910-CFP 301-1, with  
Ref B (TD 0080).  
  
DLA 2  
31 Mar 80 2-6040

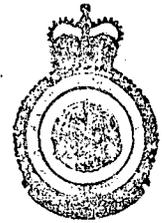
2/3  
3



0080



RESTRICTED



Air Command  
10 Tactical Air Group

Commandement Aérien  
10e Groupement Aérien Tactique

TAG 2910-1 (Plans)

Headquarters  
10 Tactical Air Group  
St Hubert, Que  
J3Y 5T5  
17 Mar 80

NDRMS/SGDDN 3-3-2  
Referred to  
Transmis à... DLA

Distribution List

PROPOSED CHANGES TO  
CFPS 283, 301(1) AND 303(1)

MAR 20 1980  
File No  
Dossier No. 2910-CFP301-1  
Charged to/Charge à DE/S...OPT-3  
6-9-79

- References:
- A. Telecon W/C Hughes (AIRCOM)/LCol Simmons 04 Mar 80
  - B. CFP 301(1) - Formations in Battle
  - C. CFP 303(1) - War Establishments and Equipment Data
  - D. CFP 283 - Conduct of Aerospace Operations
  - E. AIRCOM 2910-CFP 301 (DCOS IPR) 19 Dec 79

1. As discussed at Reference A, SSO Plans attended a two-day symposium at CFCSC 11-12 Mar 80 attended by representatives from NDHQ/DLP, FMCHQ/DCOS CD and CLFCSC; the aim of this symposium was two-fold:

- a. to review a major re-write of Chapter 6 of Reference B; and
- b. to agree on required changes to Reference C, particularly in engineer and aviation organizations.

2. The changes recommended by SSO Plans were based on the current re-write of Chapter 9 of Reference D and the AIRCOM comments at Reference E, commensurate with the fact that CFP 303(1) deals with a specific corps composition and, therefore, requires a definitive tactical aviation organization. During discussions on this organization it became apparent that Reference E would have to be modified somewhat in order that References B, C and D would be consistent.

3. Accordingly, attached are the following:

- a. Re-write of Chapter 9, CFP 283 - Conduct of Aerospace Operations;

REFERENCED LETTER PLACED ON

2910-CFP301-1 no 9361

RESTRICTED

... / 2

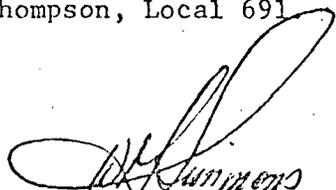
AND PASSED TO DLP

Copy placed on each CFP file

RESTRICTED

- 2 -

- b. Re-write of AIRCOM comments on CFP 301(1) - Formations in Battle; and
- c. Organization charts to amend page 5A2-1 and to replace Annex G of CFP 303(1) - War Establishments and Equipment Data (8 pages).
4. All attachments have been approved by the Commander and are recommended for inclusion in the appropriate publications. Information addressees are requested to withhold final staffing pending review by AIRCOM; HQ 10 TAG OPI is Major J.R. Thompson, Local 691

  
W.D. Simmons  
Lieutenant-Colonel  
for Commander

Attachments: 3

DISTRIBUTION LIST

Action

~~AIRCOM - DCOS IPR~~

Information (less CFP 283 re-write)

NDHQ - DLA ~~←~~  
NDHQ - DLP ~~←~~ *copy sent home*  
FMC - DCOS CD  
CFCSG/SSOs Land and Air  
~~CFCSG/DComdt~~

RESTRICTED

000268

RESTRICTED

CFP 301(1) (FIRST DRAFT) - PROPOSED AMENDMENT

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA  | LINE (s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|-----------|----------|---|
| 1      | 1-8  | 106.3     | 5        | Add ", although to markedly different degrees."   |
| 2      | 1-23 | 113.6     | 11       | Insert new sentence, "Attacks against aircraft in shelters or hangarages may be unproductive, and alternative tactics of disrupting enemy air operations by the use of cratering and area denial operations against enemy airfields may have to be employed."   |
| 3      | 2-9  | 209.7.b.  | All      | Delete and insert: "Air reconnaissance, reporting direct to Corps through the ASOC"   |
| 4      | 2-11 | 211.1.g.  | All      | Delete. "Squadron" and insert "Wing".   |
| 5      | 2-36 | 217.23.c. | 6        | Delete: "intervening"   |
| 6      | 2-36 | 217.23.e. | All      | Delete and insert:<br><u>Aviation Command Net.</u> Communications are maintained with the FSCC through a liaison element established at the supported headquarters from the LOH Squadron.   |
| 7      | 2-41 | 217.26    | All      | Delete and insert:<br><br>26. <u>Tactical Helicopter Wing</u><br><br>a. The tactical helicopter wing is equipped with light observation (LOH) and utility tactical transport (UTTH) helicopters. In addition, and if resources permit, armed (AH), medium transport (MTH) and ambulance helicopters may also be assigned to the wing from group resources. The wing's role is to augment the capability of the division to conduct prompt and sustained land combat by providing:<br><br>(1) close reconnaissance;<br><br>(2) liaison, radio relay and utility operations;<br><br>(3) direction of artillery fire and strike by close support fighter aircraft. |

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 2 -

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE(s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS   |
|--------|------|----------|---------|--|
|        |      |          |         | <p>(4) tactical and logistical airlift of troops and materiel.</p> <p>b. To perform its role, the wing is organized with:</p> <p>(1) a wing headquarters and signals troop;</p> <p>(2) LOH squadrons;</p> <p>(3) a UTTH squadron;</p> <p>(4) an administrative squadron; and</p> <p>(5) a maintenance squadron.</p> <p>c. The following may also be assigned to the wing from group resources:</p> <p>(1) an ambulance squadron;</p> <p>(2) a MTH squadron; and</p> <p>(3) an AH squadron.</p> <p>d. <u>Wing Headquarters</u>. This element provides the necessary command structure for controlling wing resources in response to the Division Commander's priorities. In order to provide the Division Commander with timely advice regarding wing capabilities, a Wing "Tac HQ" is co-located with Division Main and is manned with the necessary liaison staff; in addition, the Wing Commander also performs the function of Commander Divisional Aviation (CD AVN) and, in that capacity is available to the Division Commander as an advisor.</p> <p>e. <u>LOH Squadrons</u>. These squadrons are assigned on the basis of one per brigade plus one for divisional tasks and are equipped with sixteen LOHs for providing command, liaison, observation, reconnaissance and</p> |

RESTRICTED

.../3

000270

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE (s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|----------|----------|---|
|        |      |          |          | <p>fire control support, including the coordination of AHs which may be assigned from group resources. Aircraft can be lightly armed with machine guns or target marking rockets and equipped with hand held cameras. The squadrons can be provided with a degree of administrative and maintenance self-sufficiency as required by the tactical situation.</p> <p>f. <u>UTTH Squadron.</u> This squadron is equipped with twenty four aircraft to provide tactical and logistical lift, and perform utility tasks such as mine delivery and movement of reconnaissance parties. As with the LOH squadrons, its level of self-sufficiency would depend on the tactical situation.</p> <p>g. <u>Administrative and Maintenance Squadrons.</u> These squadrons co-ordinate wing administration, including control of aircraft spares and non-scheduled maintenance/major component changes.</p> <p>h. <u>Ambulance Squadrons.</u> Each squadron is equipped with sixteen UTTHs normally based on a grouping of four aircraft to support each brigade and the remainder of the division. The squadron will provide LOs to the DISGP operations centre as required.</p> <p>j. <u>MTH Squadrons.</u> Each squadron is equipped with eight MTHs for the primary purpose of providing logistical lift, however, MTHs can also be used to provide tactical lift into areas well to the rear of the forward edge of the battle area (FEBA). The squadron will provide LOs to the DISGP operations centre as required.</p> <p>k. <u>AH Squadrons.</u> Although the aircraft is not yet in the Canadian Forces inventory, they could be made available from the resources of an affiliated corps. A squadron could be equipped with twenty AHs armed with anti-tank guided missiles, rockets, and a 30 mm gun for providing a capability to destroy enemy armoured fighting vehicles in conjunction with other weapon systems. Assuming an availability of sixteen aircraft, it is envisaged that four flights of four would be committed to</p> |

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE (s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|----------|----------|---|
| 8      | 2-62 | 219.3.d  | All      | <p>a task, with one flight engaging, one flight ready to replace the flight engaging, one flight in transit and one flight replenishing at a Forward Arming and Refuelling Point (FARP).</p> <p>Delete and insert:</p> <p>d. <u>Tactical Helicopter Group</u></p> <p>(1) The tactical helicopter group is equipped with light observation (LOH), utility tactical transport (UTTH), medium transport (MTH), armed (AH), and ambulance helicopters to support corps, division, and brigade formations in response to the Corps Commander's priorities.</p> <p>(2) To perform its role the group may be organized with:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a group headquarters;</li> <li>(b) tactical helicopter wings;</li> <li>(c) light observation helicopter squadrons;</li> <li>(d) a UTTH squadron;</li> <li>(e) ambulance squadrons;</li> <li>(f) MTH squadrons;</li> <li>(g) AH squadrons;</li> <li>(h) a maintenance squadron; and</li> <li>(j) an administration squadron.</li> </ul> |

RESTRICTED

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA    | LINE (s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|-------------|----------|---|
| 9      | 2-A1 | Annex A     |          | Helicopter organization symbol should reflect group; i.e. "X".  |
| 10     | 2-B1 | Annex B     |          | Helicopter organization symbol should reflect a wing; i.e. "III".   |
| 11     | 2-C1 | Annex C     |          | Helicopter organization symbol should reflect a wing; i.e. "III".   |
| 12     | 2-D1 | Annex D     |          | Helicopter organization symbol should reflect equal status to that of a battalion; i.e. "II".   |
| 13     | 2-F  | Annex F     |          | Add new Annex F as attached.  |
| 14     | 3-10 | 308.7       | 3        | Delete "and aviation units".  |
| 15     | 3-21 | 313.1.h.    | All      | Delete and insert: "planning and coordination of aviation support within the divisional area".  |
| 16     | 3-24 | 314.6.a.(4) | 2,3,     | Delete and insert: "helicopter wing, who also performs the function of Commander Divisional Aviation (CD AVN)".   |
| 17     | 3-33 | 316.4.c.    | All      | Delete and insert: "Although this specialized function is retained by the Tac Hel Wing, LOs will be provided to facilitate the necessary co-ordination of maintenance supplies."                            |
| 18     | 3-36 | 317.4.a.    | 1,2,3    | Delete and insert:<br><br>4. <u>Headquarters Tactical Helicopter Wing</u><br><br>a. The Commander, Tactical Helicopter Wing also performs the function of CD Avn and in that capacity, is responsible for:" |
| 19     | 3-37 | 317.4.b.    | 1.       | Delete "CD Avn" and insert "Comd Tac Hel Wing".   |

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 6 -

| SERIAL | PAGE  | ART/PARA    | LINE(s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS   |
|--------|-------|-------------|---------|--|
| 20     | 3-41  | 320.2.e.    | All     | Delete and insert:<br><br><u>Aviation LO.</u> A liaison officer from the supporting helicopter squadron will be available to the HQ staff to co-ordinate aviation support within the Bde area. |
| 1      | 3-45  | 321.3.d.    | All     | Delete and insert: "Aviation. An LO from the brigade LOH Sqn."   |
| 22     | 3-A1  | Annex A     |         | Delete: <u>CD AVN</u><br>LCOL<br>Insert: <u>HEL WING COMD/CD AVN</u><br>CD AVN (COL)<br>SO2 Avn<br>3 X SO3 Avn   |
| 23     | 3-B1  | Annex B     |         | Delete: <u>SO3 AVN</u><br>LO AVN<br>Insert: LO AVN   |
| 24     | 3-E1  | Annex E     |         | Delete: "Hel Sqn Tac" and insert: "AVN LO".  |
| 25     | 4-108 | 435.5.b.    | 1       | Delete ";" and insert "(TACP):".   |
| 26     | 4-127 | 442.2       | 7, 8    | Delete "Offensive Air Operations" and insert "Offensive Air Support Operations".   |
| 27     | 4-127 | 443         |         | A discussion of "Battlefield Air Interdiction Operations" should be included.  |
| 28     | 4-129 | 443.6.a.    | 5       | Delete "Force" insert "Command".   |
| 29     | 4-130 | 443.6.b.(1) | 17      | Delete and insert: "located at Army Corps HQ"  |
| 30     | 4-143 | 444.7.c.    |         | Use same format as para 444.6.c. page 4.139  |

RESTRICTED

.../7

000274

RESTRICTED

- 7 -

| SERIAL | PAGE  | ART/PARA | LINE (s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS   |
|--------|-------|----------|----------|--|
| 31     | 4-148 | 448      | All      | <p>Delete and insert:</p> <p>448. <u>TACTICAL AVIATION</u></p> <p>1. <u>Role and Functions</u></p> <p>a. <u>Role</u>. The role of tactical aviation is to augment the capability of the land forces to conduct prompt and sustained land combat by providing mobility, firepower and reconnaissance required to defeat the enemy.</p> <p>b. <u>Functions</u>. The following are the five functions of land combat to which tactical aviation contributes:</p> <p>(1) <u>Reconnaissance</u>. Land force reconnaissance units are essentially terrain limited and, therefore, can benefit from the ability of tactical aviation aircraft to transit the battlefield unencumbered by terrain and obstacles. As a result of visual observation and photography, tactical aviation forces can provide the land force commander with timely intelligence for his analysis and subsequent decisions. They can monitor unoccupied areas and open flanks, follow the overall course of the battle and assist in controlling tactical and administrative movement. Lastly, they can augment armoured reconnaissance elements with full advantage being taken of the ability of the aircraft to transit the battlefield unencumbered by terrain.</p> <p>(2) <u>Firepower</u>. Tactical aviation forces can contribute to firepower by providing:</p> <p>(a) <u>Intimate Fire Support</u>. Depending on the type of armament tactical aviation aircraft can be deployed rapidly to provide anti-armour or anti-personnel fire support.</p> |

RESTRICTED

.../8

000275

RESTRICTED

- 8 -

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE (s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|----------|----------|---|
|        |      |          |          | <p>(b) <u>Direction of Fire.</u> Tactical aviation aircraft can be employed as observation platforms to control indirect or direct fire (including close air support) with full advantage being taken of the inherent ability of the aircraft to manoeuvre.</p> <p>(c) <u>Transport and Resupply of Ground Based Firepower.</u> Tactical aviation forces can rapidly deploy light and medium guns, mortars and anti-armour systems unencumbered by terrain and can resupply these systems by aerial delivery of ammunition and other commodities.</p> <p>(3) <u>Mobility.</u> The speed, responsiveness and flexibility of tactical aviation aircraft permit the rapid movement and support of land forces.</p> <p>(4) <u>Logistics.</u> Tactical aviation aircraft can augment ground transportation by providing immediate and responsive aerial delivery of supplies either directly to the user or to points where the ground logistics elements can store or deliver them; in addition, the rearward movement of casualties can be effected, either by dedicated aircraft or by aircraft returning from another mission.</p> <p>(5) <u>Command and Liaison.</u> Tactical aviation aircraft can be used as a means of reducing time and space to permit the land commander to communicate and move about his area of responsibility quickly.</p> <p>c. <u>Summary.</u> The functions of tactical aviation can be summarized as follows:</p> <p>(1) tactical intelligence;</p> <p>(2) observation and direction of fire;</p> <p>(3) destruction or disruption of enemy armoured and mechanized forces;</p> |

RESTRICTED

.../9

000276

RESTRICTED

- 9 -

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE (s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|----------|----------|---|
|        |      |          |          | <p>(4) airmobile operations;</p> <p>(5) tactical mobility for combat troops, equipment and supplies;</p> <p>(6) tactical deployment/redeployment of fire support elements;</p> <p>(7) transport of personnel and supplies for combat support and combat service support operations;</p> <p>(8) command and liaison;</p> <p>(9) casualty evacuation; and</p> <p>(10) communications assistance.</p> <p>2. <u>Principles of Employment</u></p> <p>a. <u>General</u>. The following principles of employment are basic guidelines to be followed for the optimum utilization of tactical aviation units in achieving assigned tasks. Aviation units are to a large extent equipment oriented, providing highly specialized forms of support, with characteristics capabilities and limitations which set them apart from most other combat and Combat Support Units. Their optimum use can add significantly to the effectiveness of land forces in a battle environment that necessitates speed of reaction, mobility, and timely intelligence. Principles governing aviation operations must be understood, however, to ensure best utilization is made of these resources. The following paragraphs outline the principles of employment and limitations of aviation resources.</p> <p>(1) <u>Command and Control</u>. The mobility, range and flexibility of helicopter support, together with its possible scarcity, makes it imperative that command and control are exercised at the appropriate level if resources are not to be dissipated. The control and</p> |

RESTRICTED

.../10

000277

RESTRICTED

- 10 -

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE(s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS   |
|--------|------|----------|---------|--|
|        |      |          |         | <p>allocation of resources should be exercised at the highest practicable level which provides for optimum utilization without sacrificing operational flexibility. The precise control of aviation units may vary according to task organization, and the nature and numbers of assigned aviation units.</p> <p>(2) <u>Planning</u>. When planning an operation, full advantage should be taken of the helicopter's ability to move men and supplies quickly over difficult ground or across obstacles. The plan should be based on the best use of the characteristics of the helicopter. It is not enough merely to adapt a conventional plan to the use of helicopters.</p> <p>(3) <u>Mobility</u>. The helicopter is itself an example of mobility. Because of their equipment, aviation units have the ability to move promptly about the battlefield.</p> <p>(4) <u>Flexibility</u>. Aviation units are able to execute consecutive tasking commensurate with the priorities stated and, because of their mobility, are able to respond quickly to the demands of the developing situation. This flexibility relies on prompt staff action.</p> <p>(5) <u>Allocation of Priorities</u>. A prerequisite of successful aviation operations is timely tasking. The aviation commander, the formation commander and staff at the highest possible level must agree upon priorities for aviation support. Efficient employment results from stated priorities, good communication and adequate instruction.</p> <p>(6) <u>Coordination</u>. The tactical aviation unit and the supported unit must work together closely. Coordination between units is developed through training, standard procedures, and control at the appropriate level.</p> |

RESTRICTED

.../11

000278

RESTRICTED

- 11 -

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE (s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|----------|----------|---|
|        |      |          |          | <p>(7) <u>Economy of Effort</u>. The aviation formation commander will control the allocation of available aircraft resources by assessing requests against the stated priorities and directing the appropriate grouping of aircraft.</p> <p>(8) <u>Intelligence</u>. Aviation units allocated to support a formation require a constant flow of tactical intelligence from that formation.</p> <p>(9) <u>Local Defence/Protection</u>. Although a limited capability exists to provide sentries and listening posts, aviation units not manned with defence and employment elements require protection by the supported formation.</p> <p>(10) <u>Vulnerability</u>. Helicopters are vulnerable to enemy ground and air fire, and care must be taken when planning helicopter operations to avoid possible enemy engagement wherever possible. AH and some utility or multi-role helicopters have a self defence and fire suppression capability; however, the best defence for the helicopter remains stealth, concealment and the best tactical use of terrain "(NOE operations)".</p> <p>3. <u>Characteristics and Limitations of Tactical Aviation Forces</u></p> <p>a. <u>General</u>. Tactical aviation forces are to a large degree equipment-oriented, providing highly specialized forms of support with characteristics and limitations essentially governed by aircraft type. At the moment the helicopter is the aircraft primarily used by tactical aviation forces, with the following types of helicopters being required in order to fulfill the functions summarized at Art 448.b.:</p> <p>(1) Light Observation Helicopter (LOH);</p> <p>(2) Utility Tactical Transport Helicopter (UTTH);</p> |

RESTRICTED

.../12

000279

RESTRICTED

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE (s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|----------|----------|---|
|        |      |          |          | <p>(3) Medium Transport Helicopter (MTH); and</p> <p>(4) Attack Helicopter (AH).</p> <p>b. <u>Characteristics</u>. The following characteristics are common to all types of helicopters, but in varying degrees:</p> <p>(1) <u>Mobility</u>. By virtue of its manoeuverability and ability to rapidly transition throughout the flight envelope, the helicopter is capable of operating in and out of restricted areas, and moving promptly about the battlefield virtually unhindered by terrain.</p> <p>(2) <u>Flexibility</u>. Aviation units are able to execute consecutive tasking commensurate with the priorities stated and are able to quickly respond to changes in demands as the situation develops.</p> <p>(3) <u>Firepower</u>. With the exception of the attack helicopter, current tactical aviation aircraft possess only defensive firepower. However, attack helicopters can provide accurate and timely direct firepower against rapidly moving armoured or mechanized forces.</p> <p>(4) <u>Range and Payload</u>. Helicopters are designed to carry out their mission over specific distances (range) and to transport specific weights (payload). However, range and payload are interrelated. Thus, provided that the overall design limits of the aircraft are not exceeded, reducing the amount of fuel with the attendant decrease in range will allow a greater load to be lifted.</p> <p>(5) <u>Maintenance Requirements</u>. Helicopters are complex machines which require specialized maintenance. Although routine maintenance functions can be conducted during field operations, more complex activities such as battle casualty repair and major component changes require a secure area where maintenance can be conducted with minimum disruption.</p> |

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 13 -

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE (s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|----------|----------|---|
|        |      |          |          | <p>c. <u>Limitations</u>. The following limitations must be taken into account when considering the employment of tactical aviation. The effect of these limitations can be minimized in most circumstances by proper planning.</p> <p>(1) <u>Vulnerability</u>. The inherent characteristics of the aircraft and the limited establishment of the organization are such that tactical aviation forces are vulnerable to enemy direct and indirect fire. Although survivability can be enhanced by employing flying techniques designed to minimize detection and by siting the unit in relatively secure areas, the following points must be kept in mind:</p> <p>(a) <u>Aircraft</u>. The design of tactical aviation aircraft is based on the operational necessity of minimizing basic weight in order to maximize payload; consequently, the resulting air-frame incorporate light weight metals highly susceptible to damage from virtually any projectile with protection from small arms fire only provided for critical components.</p> <p>(b) <u>Organization</u>. Tactical aviation units are not normally manned with integral defence elements for local protection. Such units are organized and established primarily to support flying operations and only have a limited capability to provide sentries for early warning.</p> <p>(2) <u>Aircrew Fatigue</u>. The severe demands of flying in a hostile environment coupled with the rigours of field living can quickly produce aircrew fatigue unless realistic limits governing aircrew work/rest periods are established and a relatively high standard of field accommodation is maintained. Although tactical aviation units are capable of meeting the requirements of surge periods, constant flying at maximum rates can rapidly deplete aircrew resources. While it is recognized that fatigue is a factor</p> |

RESTRICTED

.../14

000281

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA   | LINE(s) | COMMENTS / PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|------------|---------|---|
|        |      |            |         | <p>throughout the battlefield, it must be remembered that the consequences in tactical aviation could jeopardize mission accomplishment and lead to unacceptable losses of personnel and materiel resources.</p> <p>(3) <u>Weather</u>. Helicopters currently employed by tactical aviation forces are affected by:</p> <p>(a) <u>Wind</u>. High winds and/or gusty wind conditions will restrict operations.</p> <p>(b) <u>Density Altitude</u>. High altitude and/or high air temperature will reduce payload.</p> <p>(c) <u>Icing and Thunderstorms</u>. These weather conditions may completely eliminate operations.</p> <p>(d) <u>Severe Cold</u>. Additional time will be required to heat aircraft components prior to engine start and rotor engagement.</p> <p>(e) <u>Visibility</u>. Although helicopters can operate in poor visibility (ie, night, precipitation, etc), mission accomplishment may well be adversely affected; ie, the range of visual acquisition could be reduced to a level whereby tactical advantage would be lost.</p> |
| 32     | 5-26 | 505.18.(h) | All     | Delete  |
| 33     | 6-59 | 616.5.e.   | All     | Delete and insert: "with armed helicopters providing a flexible and responsive anti-armour striking force".   |

DIV HQ

TACP

OC TACP (MAJ)  
2x AIR OPS O (CAPT)  
1x INT OP (SGT)  
1x RAD OP (SGT)  
2x RAD OP (MCPL)  
3x RAD OP (CPL)  
2x RAD OP (C-P)

1x 1/4 T w/TLR  
2x 5/4 T OFFICE w/TLR  
2x 5/4 T RAD STN w/TLR

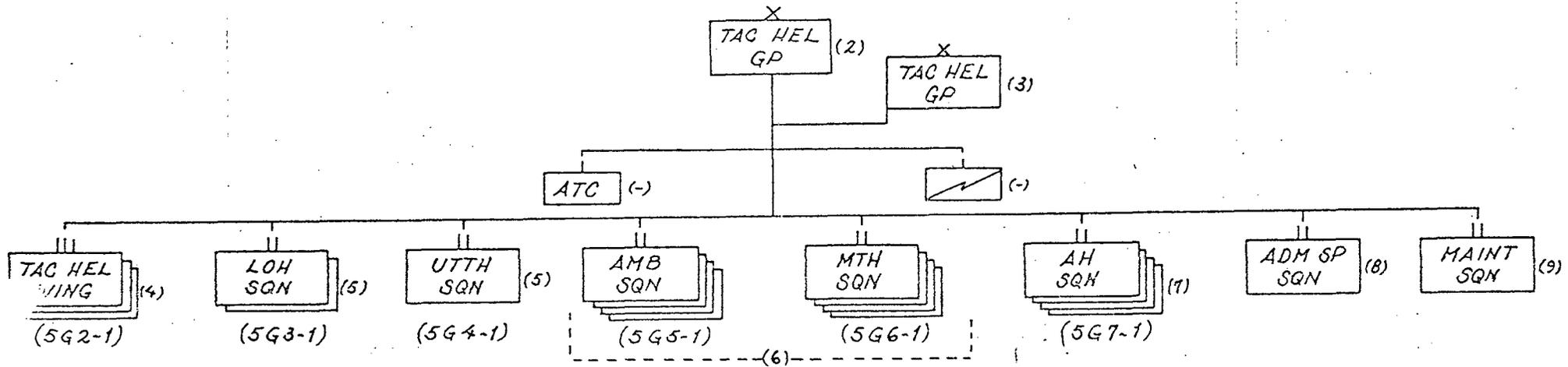
TAC HEL WING COMD/CD AVN  
(COL)

SO 2 AVN (MAJ)  
3x SO 3 AVN (CAPT)  
1x RAD OP (CPL)  
3x RAD OP (C-P)  
(NOTE: ADM/MAINT LOS  
PROVIDED AS REQUIRED)

2x 1/4 T w/TLR  
2x 5/4 T w/TLR

5A2-1

## TACTICAL HELICOPTER GROUP (1)



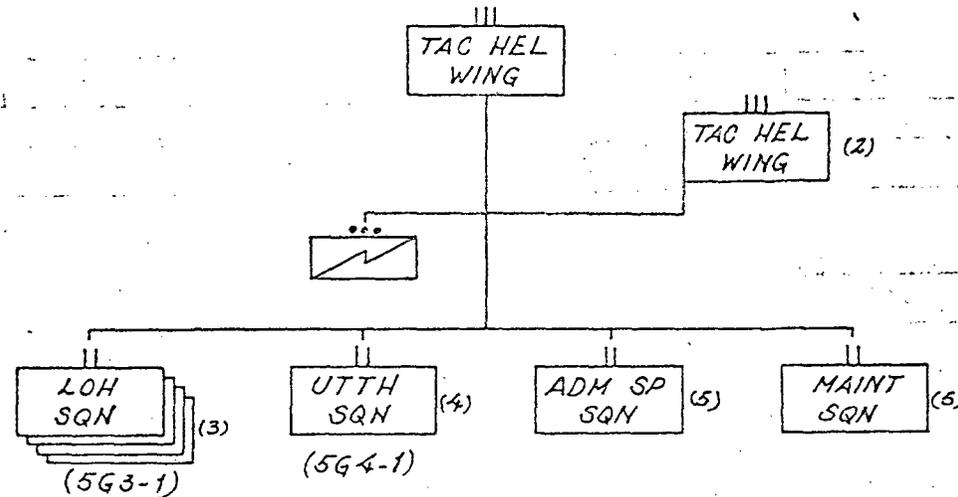
- NOTES:**
1. Organization based on tactical aviation support requirements of a corps consisting of an armoured division, two mechanized divisions and as corps troops, an armoured reconnaissance brigade (CARB) and a mechanized brigade group (CMBG).
  2. Group organized to provide all levels of aircraft maintenance support (including holding of spares) but requires second line combat service support from COSCOM and DISGP.
  3. Headquarters provides the necessary staff and liaison functions including a CC AVN element, LOs for contingency planning with corps troops and "Tac HQs" for COSCOM Med Gp and Tn Gp as required.
  4. Wings are assigned to divisions under operational control and under administrative command for second line combat service support (less aircraft maintenance).
  5. Squadrons are provided in support of Corps troops and may be assigned under operational control of CARB or CMBG for independent operations or used to augment other squadrons as required.
  6. Squadrons may also be assigned to wings in support of division operations; when grouped for operations as shown, "Tac HQs" are provided by group for COSCOM Med Gp and Tn Gp, with LOs provided by squadrons to DISGP Operations Centre as required.
  7. Squadrons may also be assigned to wings in support of division operations.
  8. Squadron provides first line combat service support for all group-level elements.
  9. Squadron provides aircraft maintenance support for all group-level elements.

AIRCRAFT SUMMARY

| SERIAL | DETAIL | TAG HEL<br>WINGS*3 | LOH SQN<br>x 2 | AH SQNS<br>x 4 | MTH<br>SQNS x 4 | UTTH<br>SQN | AMB<br>SQNS x 4 | TOTAL |
|--------|--------|--------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|-------|
| (a)    | (b)    | (c)                | (d)            | (e)            | (f)             | (g)         | (h)             | (j)   |
| 1      | LOH    | 64                 | 16             |                |                 |             |                 | 224   |
| 2      | UTTH   | 24                 |                |                |                 | 24          | 16              | 160   |
| 3      | MTH    |                    |                |                | 8               |             |                 | 32    |
| 4      | AH     |                    |                | 20             |                 |             |                 | 80    |

591-2

## TACTICAL HELICOPTER WING (1)



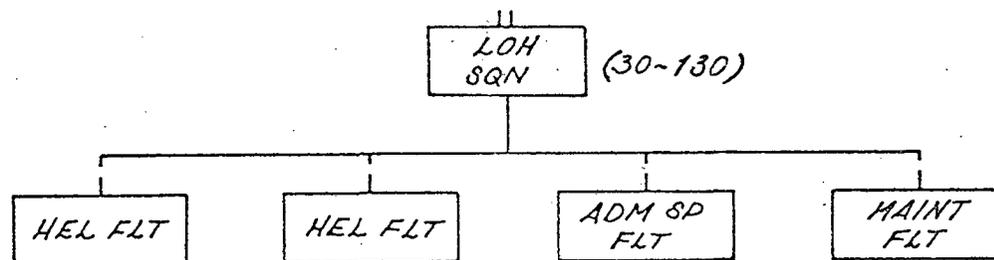
- NOTES:
1. Organization based on tactical aviation support requirements of a division within a corps having a tactical helicopter group; Amb, MTH and AH resources can be assigned as required.
  2. Provides CD Avn element for Division Main; includes signals troops.
  3. Squadrons assigned under tactical control of brigade commanders with remaining squadron in support of divisional tasks.
  4. Squadron supports divisional tasks.
  5. Squadrons provide first line combat service support and maintenance support for wing.

SUMMARY

| SERIAL           | DETAIL | WING HQ | LOH SQN<br>x 4 | UTTH SQN | ADM SP<br>SQN | MAINT SQN | TOTAL |
|------------------|--------|---------|----------------|----------|---------------|-----------|-------|
| (a)              | (b)    | (c)     | (d)            | (e)      | (f)           | (g)       | (h)   |
| <i>PERSONNEL</i> |        |         |                |          |               |           |       |
| 1                | OFFRS  | 20      | 30             | 70       | 5             | 5         | 220   |
| 2                | ORs    | 120     | 130            | 170      | 80            | 140       | 1030  |
| <i>AIRCRAFT</i>  |        |         |                |          |               |           |       |
| 3                | LOH    |         | 16             |          |               |           | 64    |
| 4                | UTTH   |         |                | 24       |               |           | 24    |
| <i>VEHICLES</i>  |        |         |                |          |               |           |       |
| 5                |        | 40      | 60             | 90       | 30            | 60        | 460   |

592-2

LIGHT OBSERVATION HELICOPTER SQUADRON

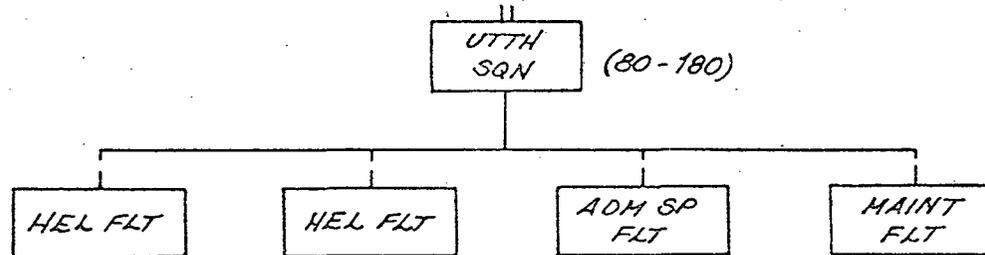


NOTE: ALL AIRCREW CAN PERFORM C&L, RECCE, AIR OP TASKS AND SUPPORT AH OPERATIONS

SUMMARY

| SERIAL           | DETAIL    | SQN HQ | HEL FLT x2 | ADM SP FLT | MAINT FLT | SQN TOTAL |
|------------------|-----------|--------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| (a)              | (b)       | (c)    | (d)        | (e)        | (f)       | (g)       |
| <u>PERSONNEL</u> |           |        |            |            |           |           |
| 1                | OFFRS     | 6      | 11         | 1          | 1         | 30        |
| 2                | ORs       | 12     | 12         | 34         | 60        | 130       |
| <u>AIRCRAFT</u>  |           |        |            |            |           |           |
| 3                | LOH       |        | 8          |            |           | 16        |
| <u>VEHICLES</u>  |           |        |            |            |           |           |
| 4                | 1/4 TON   | 3      | 2          | 2          | 2         | 11        |
| 5                | 5/4 TON   | 5      | 6          | 4          | 5         | 26        |
| 6                | 2 1/2 TON |        | 2          | 6          | 9         | 19        |
| 7                | 5 TON POD |        |            | 4          |           | 4         |

UTILITY TACTICAL TRANSPORT HELICOPTER SQUADRON



SUMMARY

| SERIAL | DETAIL | SQN HQ | HEL FLT x 2 | ADM SP FLT | MAINT FLT | SQN TOTAL |
|--------|--------|--------|-------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| (a)    | (b)    | (c)    | (d)         | (e)        | (f)       | (g)       |

PERSONNEL

|   |       |    |    |    |    |     |
|---|-------|----|----|----|----|-----|
| 1 | OFFRS | 6  | 31 | 1  | 1  | 70  |
| 2 | ORs   | 12 | 19 | 44 | 16 | 170 |

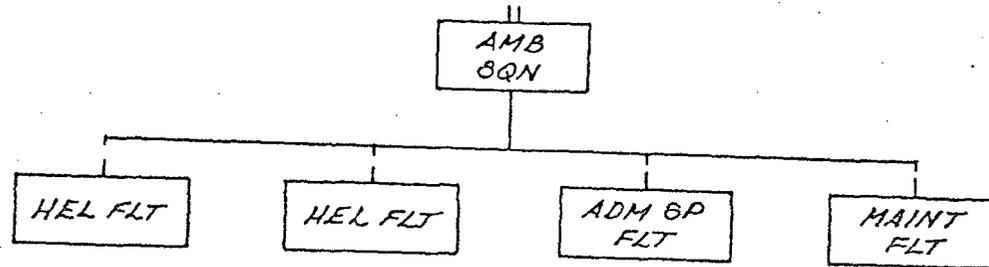
AIRCRAFT

|   |      |  |    |  |  |    |
|---|------|--|----|--|--|----|
| 3 | UTTH |  | 12 |  |  | 24 |
|---|------|--|----|--|--|----|

VEHICLES

|   |           |   |   |   |    |    |
|---|-----------|---|---|---|----|----|
| 4 | 1/4 TON   | 3 | 3 | 2 | 3  | 14 |
| 5 | 5/4 TON   | 5 | 8 | 6 | 7  | 34 |
| 6 | 2 1/2 TON |   | 5 | 8 | 15 | 33 |
| 7 | 5 TON POD |   |   | 9 |    | 9  |

AMBULANCE SQUADRON

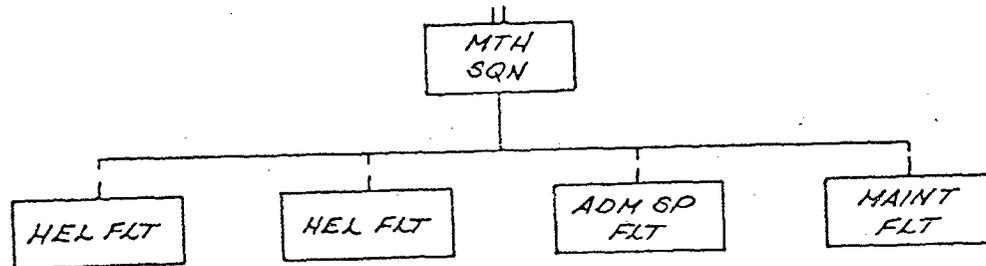


SUMMARY

| SERIAL           | DETAIL    | SQN HQ | HEL FLT x 2 | ADM SP FLT | MAINT FLT | SQN TOTAL |
|------------------|-----------|--------|-------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| (a)              | (b)       | (c)    | (d)         | (e)        | (f)       | (g)       |
| <u>PERSONNEL</u> |           |        |             |            |           |           |
| 1                | OFFRS     | 6      | 21          | 1          | 1         | 50        |
| 2                | ORs       | 12     | 16          | 40         | 66        | 150       |
| <u>AIRCRAFT</u>  |           |        |             |            |           |           |
| 3                | UTTH      |        | 8           |            |           | 16        |
| <u>VEHICLES</u>  |           |        |             |            |           |           |
| 4                | 1/4 TON   | 3      | 2           | 2          | 3         | 12        |
| 5                | 3/4 TON   | 5      | 7           | 5          | 6         | 30        |
| 6                | 2 1/2 TON |        | 4           | 7          | 12        | 27        |
| 7                | 5 TON POD |        |             | 6          |           | 6         |

565-1

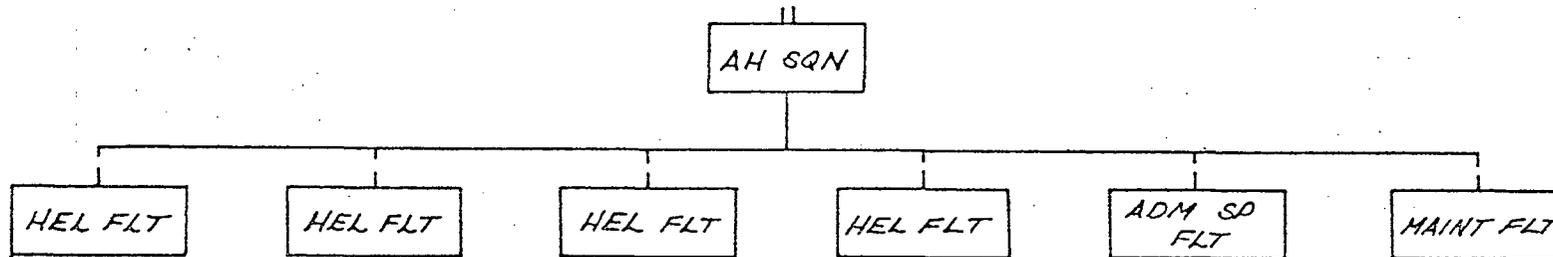
MEDIUM TRANSPORT HELICOPTER SQUADRON



SUMMARY

| SERIAL           | DETAIL                     | SQN HQ | HEL FLT x 2 | ADM GP FLT | MAINT FLT | SQN TOTAL |
|------------------|----------------------------|--------|-------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| (a)              | (b)                        | (c)    | (d)         | (e)        | (f)       | (g)       |
| <u>PERSONNEL</u> |                            |        |             |            |           |           |
| 1                | OFFRS                      | 6      | 11          | 1          | 1         | 30        |
| 2                | ORs                        | 12     | 11          | 40         | 76        | 150       |
| <u>AIRCRAFT</u>  |                            |        |             |            |           |           |
| 3                | MTH                        |        | 4           |            |           | 8         |
| <u>VEHICLES</u>  |                            |        |             |            |           |           |
| 4                | 1/4 TON                    | 3      | 3           | 2          | 3         | 14        |
| 5                | 5/4 TON                    | 5      | 4           | 4          | 7         | 24        |
| 6                | 2 1/2 TON                  |        | 4           | 6          | 15        | 29        |
| 7                | 5 TON POD                  |        |             | 4          |           | 4         |
| 8                | 5T TRACTOR<br>(w/ POD TRL) |        |             | 4          |           | 4         |

ARMED HELICOPTER SQUADRON



SUMMARY

| SERIAL           | DETAIL    | SQN HQ | HEL FLT x 4 | ADM SP FLT | MAINT FLT | SQN TOTAL |
|------------------|-----------|--------|-------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| (a)              | (b)       | (c)    | (d)         | (e)        | (f)       | (g)       |
| <i>PERSONNEL</i> |           |        |             |            |           |           |
| 1                | OFFRS     | 8      | 15          | 1          | 1         | 70        |
| 2                | ORS       | 12     |             | 38         | 70        | 120       |
| <i>AIRCRAFT</i>  |           |        |             |            |           |           |
| 3                | AH        |        | 5           |            |           | 20        |
| <i>VEHICLES</i>  |           |        |             |            |           |           |
| 4                | 1/4 TON   | 3      |             | 6          | 3         | 12        |
| 5                | 5/4 TON   | 5      |             | 6          | 6         | 17        |
| 6                | 2 1/2 TON |        |             | 9          | 12        | 21        |
| 7                | 5 TON PAD |        |             | 6          |           | 6         |

(DLP 4-2)

14 Jan 80

File

COMMENTS ON DRAFT

1. The comments made on the 1st draft of CFP 301(1) are attached to this memo & returned to NDRMS for PA. The pencil notes on the individual comments reflect the decisions as follows:

- a. ✓ - comment accepted;
- b. X - comment rejected;
- c. | - comment to be assimilated by author if possible;
- d. = - doubtful, but consider; &
- e. O - comment could not be ident with text.

2. Copies of these comments & the notes of decisions, along with a draft copy containing annotations re comments was hand-carried to the author during my visit to him 15-21 Jan 80. DLP4 holds copies of comments, decisions & annotated draft so author can obtain clarifications if reqd.




DLP4-2

2-8550



RESTRICTED

9361



Canadian Armed Forces  
Air Command

Forces armées canadiennes  
Commandement Aérien



2910-CFP 301 (DCOS IPR)

53

Air Command Headquarters  
Westwin, Man  
R2R OTO  
19 Dec 79

NDRMS/SGDDN 3-3-2  
Referred to  
Transmis à *DLP*.....

AFC 27 1979

File No  
Dossier No *2910-CFP301-1*

Charged to/Chargé à *DG-15*

*OP+3*

*6-9-79*

Distribution List

CFP 301(1) (FIRST DRAFT) - FORMATIONS IN BATTLE

The comments of HQ Air Command on the First Draft of  
CFP 301(1) - Formations in Battle are attached at Annex A for  
your consideration.

*[Signature]*  
D.G. McBride  
Colonel  
for Commander

*one* *P*

Attachment:

Annex A - CFP 301(1) (First Draft) - Proposed Amendments

DISTRIBUTION LIST

External

Action

Info

(NDHQ/DLP)

NDHQ/DLA *copy sent*  
FMC/DCOS CD  
HQ 10 TAG/SSO PLANS

Internal

Info

SSO TAC HEL

*NOTE: This letter  
cancelled by  
Aircom HQ letter  
2910-CFP 301 (DCOS  
IPR)*

*24 Mar 80*

*Pal  
DLP4  
24 Apr 80*

RESTRICTED

4/2

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

1967

RESTRICTED

ANNEX A  
 TO: 2910-CFP 301(1)  
 FIRST DRAFT  
 DATED: 19 DEC 79

CFP 301(1) (FIRST DRAFT) - PROPOSED AMENDMENT

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE(s) | COMMENTS/PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|----------|---------|---|
| 1      | 1-8  | 106.3    | 5       | Add ",although to markedly different degrees."  |
| 2      | 1-23 | 113.6    | 11      | Insert new sentence, " Attacks against aircraft in shelters or hangarages may be unproductive, and alternative tactics of disrupting enemy air operations by the use of cratering and area denial operations against enemy airfields may have to be employed."  |
| 3      | 2-9  | 209.7.b. | A11     | Delete and insert:<br>"Air reconnaissance, reporting direct to Corps through the ASOC."   |
| 4      | 2-11 | 211.1.3  | A11     | Delete "Squadron" and insert "Wing".  |
| 5      | 2-36 | 214.23.c | 6       | Delete "intervening"  |
| 6      | 2-41 | 214.26   | A11     | Delete and insert:<br>"26. <u>Tactical Helicopter Wing</u><br><br>a. The tactical helicopter wing is equipped with light observation (LOH) and utility tactical transport (UTTH) helicopter support. In addition, and if resources permit, attack (AH) and medium transport (MTH) helicopters may also be integral to the wing. The wing's role is to augment the capability of the division to conduct prompt and sustained land combat by providing:<br><br>(1) close reconnaissance;<br><br>(2) liaison, radio relay and utility operations; |

X  
X  
X  
X  
X

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE(s) | COMMENTS/PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|----------|---------|---|
|        |      |          |         | <p>(3) direction of artillery fire and strike by close support fighter aircraft;</p> <p>(4) anti-armour fire support; and</p> <p>(5) tactical and logistical airlift of troops and material including immediate casualty evacuation.</p> <p>b. To perform its role, the wing is organized with:</p> <p>(1) a wing headquarters and signals troop;</p> <p>(2) brigade tactical helicopter squadrons;</p> <p>(3) a general purpose tactical helicopter squadron;</p> <p>(4) a UTTH squadron;</p> <p>(5) an AH squadron;</p> <p>(6) a MTH squadron;</p> <p>(7) an ambulance squadron;</p> <p>(8) an administrative squadron; and</p> <p>(9) a maintenance squadron.</p> <p>c. <u>Wing Headquarters and Signals Troop.</u> This element provides the necessary command structure for controlling wing resources in response to the Div Comd's priorities. In order to provide the Div Comd with timely advice regarding wing capabilities, a Wing Tac HQ is co-located with Div Main and is manned with the</p> |

RESTRICTED

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE(s) | COMMENTS/PROPOSED AMENDMENTS   |
|--------|------|----------|---------|--|
|        |      |          |         | <p>NECESSARY LO staff; in addition, the Wing Comd also performs the function of Commander Divisional Aviation (CD AVN) and, in that capacity, is available to the Div Comd as required.</p> <p>d. <u>Brigade Tactical Helicopter Squadrons.</u> These squadrons are equipped with thirteen LOHs and are normally assigned under operational control of brigades for providing command, liaison, observation, reconnaissance and fire control support, including the coordination of AHs which may be assigned to the brigades. Aircraft can be lightly armed with machine guns or target marking rockets and equipped with hand held cameras. The squadrons are also organized with an administrative and maintenance flight making them essentially self-sufficient except for non-scheduled aircraft maintenance and major component replacement.</p> <p>e. <u>General Purpose Tactical Helicopter Squadron.</u> This squadron is equipped with eighteen LOHs for providing support to the division reconnaissance and artillery regiments and division headquarters. It also supports the AH squadron on divisional tasks. Except for the number of aircraft its level of self-sufficiency is essentially the same as the brigade tactical helicopter squadrons.</p> <p>f. <u>UTTH Squadron.</u> This squadron is equipped with twenty four UTTHs for providing tactical and logistical lift, and performing utility tasks such as mine delivery and movement of reconnaissance parties. Except for the number and type of aircraft, its level of self-sufficiency is essentially the same as the brigade tactical helicopter squadron (less armament).</p> |

RESTRICTED

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE(s) | COMMENTS/PROPOSED AMENDMENTS   |
|--------|------|----------|---------|--|
|        |      |          |         | <p>g. <u>AH Squadron.</u> Attack helicopters are specialized in role and may, if resources are scarce, be controlled at higher level. If circumstances permit integral AH support to the helicopter wing at division, this squadron is equipped with twenty AHs armed with anti-tank guided missiles, rockets and a 30 mm gun for providing a capability to destroy enemy armoured fighting vehicles in conjunction with other weapon systems. Assuming an availability of sixteen aircraft, it is envisaged that four flights of four will be committed to a task with one flight engaging one flight ready to replace the flight engaging, one flight in transit and one flight replenishing at a Forward Arming and Refuelling Point (FARP). Except for the number and type of aircraft, its level of self-sufficiency is essentially the same as the brigade tactical helicopter squadrons.</p> <p>h. <u>MTH Squadron.</u> MTH support, like AH, maybe controlled at a higher level if resources are scarce and better utilization can be so obtained. If circumstances permit integral MTH support at the helicopter wing at division, the Squadron is equipped with eight MTHs for the primary purpose of providing logistical lift; however, MTHs can also be used to provide tactical lift into areas well to the rear of the FEBA. Except for the number and type of aircraft, its level of self-sufficiency is essentially the same as the brigade tactical helicopter squadrons.</p> <p>j. <u>Ambulance Squadron.</u> This squadron is equipped with sixteen UTTHs for providing dedicated CASEVAC support, normally based on a permanent grouping of four air-</p> |

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE(s) | COMMENTS/PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|------|----------|---------|---|
|        |      |          |         | <p>craft to support each brigade. Except for the number and type of aircraft, its level of self-sufficiency is essentially the same as the brigade tactical helicopter squadrons.</p> <p>k. <u>Administrative and Maintenance Squadrons.</u> These squadrons are normally located in the DAA to coordinate wing administration, including control of aircraft spares, and non-scheduled maintenance/major component changes. LOs are provided as required to the Division DCOS Adm staff.</p> |
| 7      | 2-62 | 219.3.d  | A11     | <p>Delete and Insert:</p> <p>"d. <u>Aviation.</u> From the Corps Aviation Group, additional AH, MTH, <u>UTTH and Amb Sqns.</u>"</p>   |
| 8      | 2-A1 | Annex A  |         | Helicopter organization symbol should reflect group; i.e. "X".  |
| 9      | 2-B1 | Annex B  |         | Helicopter organization symbol should reflect a wing; i.e. "III".   |
| 10     | 2-C1 | Annex C  |         | Helicopter organization symbol should reflect a wing; i.e. "III".   |
| 11     | 2-D1 | Annex D  |         | Helicopter organization symbol should reflect equal status to that of a battalion; i.e. "II".   |
| 12     | 3-10 | 308.7    | 3       | Delete "and aviation units".  |
| 13     | 3-24 | 314.6.a  | 2, 3    | <p>Delete and insert:</p> <p>"helicopter <u>wing</u>, who also performs the function of Commander Divisional Aviation (CD AVN)."</p>  |

RESTRICTED

| SERIAL               | PAGE  | ART/PARA | LINE(s) | COMMENTS/PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
|----------------------|-------|----------|---------|---|--------|------|----------------------|--------------|---------|-------------|
| 14                   | 3-33  | 316.4.c  | A11     | Delete and insert:<br><br>"Although this specialized function is retained by the Tac Hel Wing, LOs will be provided to facilitate the necessary co-ordination of maintenance supplies."   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| 15                   | 3-36  | 317.4.a  | 1, 2, 3 | Delete and insert:<br><br>"4. <u>Headquarters Tactical Helicopter Wing</u><br><br>a. The Commander, Tactical Helicopter Wing also performs the function of CD Avn and in that capacity, is responsible for:"  |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| 16                   | 3-37  | 317.4.b  | 1       | Delete "CD Avn" and insert "Comd Tac Hel Wing".   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| 17                   | 3-45  | 321.3.d  | A11     | Delete and insert:<br><br>"Aviation. An LO from the brigade Tac Hel Sqn."   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| 18                   | 3-A1  | Annex a  |         | Delete: <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td>CD AVN</td></tr><tr><td>LCOL</td></tr></table> Insert: <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td>HEL WING COMD/CD AVN</td></tr><tr><td>CD AVN (COL)</td></tr><tr><td>S02 Avn</td></tr><tr><td>3 X S03 Avn</td></tr></table> | CD AVN | LCOL | HEL WING COMD/CD AVN | CD AVN (COL) | S02 Avn | 3 X S03 Avn |
| CD AVN               |       |          |         |   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| LCOL                 |       |          |         |   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| HEL WING COMD/CD AVN |       |          |         |   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| CD AVN (COL)         |       |          |         |   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| S02 Avn              |       |          |         |   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| 3 X S03 Avn          |       |          |         |   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| 19                   | 3-E1  | Annex E  |         | Delete "Hel Sqn Tac" and insert "Avn/Sqn LO".   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| 20                   | 4-59  | 419.5.c. | 4, 5    | Delete "should" and "not singly".   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| 21                   | 4-108 | 435.5.b  | 1       | Delete ";" and insert "(TACP);".  |        |      |                      |              |         |             |
| 22                   | 4-127 | 442.2    | 7, 8    | Delete "Offensive Air Operations" and insert "Offensive Air Support Operations"   |        |      |                      |              |         |             |

No  
X  
X  
✓  
✓  
✓

RESTRICTED

| SERIAL | PAGE  | ART/PARA    | LINE(s) | COMMENTS/PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|-------|-------------|---------|---|
| 23     | 4-127 | 443         |         | A discussion of "Battlefield Air Interdiction Operations" should be included. X   |
| 24     | 4-129 | 443.6.a     | 5       | Abbreviation for Joint Force Operations should be "JF" X  |
| 25     | 4-131 | 443.6.b.(1) | 17      | Delete and Insert:<br>"located at Army Corps HQ." ✓   |
| 26     | 4-143 | 444.7.c     |         | Use same format as para 444.6.c → page 4.139  |
| 27     | 4-148 | 448.1       | All     | Delete and Insert:<br>"The role of aviation is to augment the capability of the land forces by providing mobility, fire power reconnaissance and logistic support required to defeat the enemy."  |
| 28     | 4-149 | 3           | All     | Delete and Insert: <i>Reject</i><br>"3. <u>Principles for the Employment of Helicopters</u><br><br><u>General.</u> The following principles of employment are basic guidelines to be followed for the optimum utilization of tactical aviation units in achieving assigned tasks. Aviation units are to a large extent equipment oriented, providing highly specialized forms of support, with characteristics capabilities and limitations which set them apart from most other combat and Combat Support Units. Their optimum use can add significantly to the effectiveness of land forces in a battle environment that necessitates speed of reaction, mobility, and timely intelligence. Principles governing aviation operations must be understood, however, to ensure best utilization is made of these resources. The following paragraphs outline the principles of employment and limitations of aviation resources: X |

| SERIAL | PAGE | ART/PARA | LINE(s) | COMMENTS/PROPOSED AMENDMENTS   |
|--------|------|----------|---------|--|
|        |      |          |         | <p>a. <u>Command and Control.</u> The mobility, range and flexibility of helicopter support, together with its possible scarcity, makes it imperative that command and control are exercised at the appropriate level if resources are not to be dissipated. The control and allocation of resources should be exercised at the highest practicable level which provides for optimum utilization without sacrificing operational flexibility. The precise control of aviation units may vary according to task organization, and the nature and numbers of assigned aviation units.</p> <p>b. <u>Planning.</u> When planning an operation, full advantage should be taken of the helicopter's ability to move men and supplies quickly over difficult ground or across obstacles. The plan should be based on the best use of the characteristics of the helicopter. It is not enough merely to adapt a conventional plan to the use of helicopters.</p> <p>c. <u>Mobility.</u> The helicopter is itself an example of mobility. Because of their equipment, aviation units have the ability to move promptly about the battlefield.</p> <p>d. <u>Flexibility.</u> Aviation units are able to execute consecutive tasking commensurate with the priorities stated and, because of their mobility, are able to respond quickly to the demands of the developing situation. This flexibility relies on prompt staff action.</p> <p>e. <u>Allocation of Priorities.</u> A prerequisite for successful aviation operations is timely tasking. The aviation commander, the formation commander and staff at the highest possible level must agree upon priorities for aviation support. Efficient employment results from stated priorities, good communication and adequate instruction.</p> |

RESTRICTED

| SERIAL | PAGE  | ART/PARA | LINE(s) | COMMENTS/PROPOSED AMENDMENTS   |
|--------|-------|----------|---------|--|
| 29     | 4-152 | 448.5.a. |         | <p>f. <u>Coordination</u>. The tactical aviation unit and the supported unit must work together closely. Coordination between units is developed through training, standard procedures, and control at the appropriate level.</p> <p>g. <u>Economy of Effort</u>. The aviation formation commander will control the allocation of available aircraft resources by assessing requests against the stated priorities and directing the appropriate grouping of aircraft.</p> <p>h. <u>Intelligence</u>. Aviation units allocated to support a formation require a constant flow of tactical intelligence from that formation.</p> <p>j. <u>Local Defence/Protection</u>. Although a limited capability exists to provide sentries and listening posts, aviation units not manned with defence and employment elements require protection by the supported formation.</p> <p>k. <u>Vulnerability</u>. Helicopters are vulnerable to enemy ground and air fire, and care must be taken when planning helicopter operations to avoid possible enemy engagement wherever possible. AH and some utility or multi-role helicopters have a self defence and fire suppression capability; however, the best defence for the helicopter remains stealth, concealment and the best tactical use of terrain "(NOE operations)".</p> <p>Add:<br/>                     "Although routine maintenance functions can be conducted during field operations; several maintenance functions, such as battle casualty repair and major component assembly and overhaul require a secure area where maintenance can be conducted with minimum disruption."</p> |

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

| SERIAL | PAGE  | ART/PARA | LINE(s) | COMMENTS/PROPOSED AMENDMENTS  |
|--------|-------|----------|---------|---|
| 30     | 4-153 | 448.5.d. |         | Add:<br>"Helicopter operations are affected by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. <u>Wind</u>. High winds and/or gusty conditions will restrict operations;</li> <li>b. <u>Visibility</u>. Although the helicopter can operate in poor visibility, its ability to complete its mission is the criterion. Precipitation and obscuring phenomena will limit visual observation;</li> <li>c. <u>Altitude/Ambient Temperature</u>. High altitude and/or high air temperature reduce helicopter payload; and</li> <li>d. <u>Icing and Thunderstorms</u>. These weather conditions may prevent helicopter operations altogether.</li> </ul> |
| 31     | 4-156 | 448.7    |         | Add as new para 8:<br>" <u>Range and Payload</u> . Helicopters are designed to carry out their mission over specific distances (range) and to transport specific weights (payload). There is a degree of exchange between range and payload, for example; reducing the amount of fuel with the attendant decrease in range, to lift a greater weight; however, the overall design limits of the aircraft cannot be exceeded."   |
| 32     | 5-26  | 505.18.h | A11     | Delete  |
| 33     | 6-59  | 616.5.e  | A11     | Delete and insert:<br>"Providing a flexible and responsive anti-armour str-king force."   |

RESTRICTED

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301-1  
~~2910-CFP 301(1)~~ (DMPR 2-2)

17 Dec 79

DLP 4

CFP 301(1) - FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FIRST DRAFT  
COMMENTS SURGEON GENERAL BRANCH

Refs: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP 4), 5 Oct 79  
B. CLFSG 11-14 Dec 79  
C. Combat Service Support Study, 29 Oct 79

1. Many of the comments that follow are as a result of a consensus reached at Ref B above. The medical structure organization and chain of command recommended are at odds with the proposed doctrine of CFP 301(1) First Draft.

2. Recommended changes are:

- a. Page 1-15 serial 109 para 4. The Additional Protocol I to the Geneva Convention of 12 Aug 49 should be specifically mentioned here as it affects tactics of commanders in the field.
- b. Page 2-10 serial 210 para 1 b.(b). The Divisional Support Group is referred to here for the first time, however, from there on it is called the Divisional Service Group. This point on terminology needs to be clarified by the OPI but most importantly the medical organization should not be included here.
- c. Page 2-10 serial 210 para 1 b. Change serial 1 b (7) to read "division medical group" and change present 1 b (7) to 1 b (8).
- d. Page 2-49 serial 218 para 2 c (5). A Medical Battalion is stated as being part of the DISGP. This is contrary to our views on the subject which are spelled out in detail at Chapter 6 Serial 692 of Volume I of Ref C above. All reference to a Medical Battalion should be removed and replaced with e.g.

"7. Division Medical Group

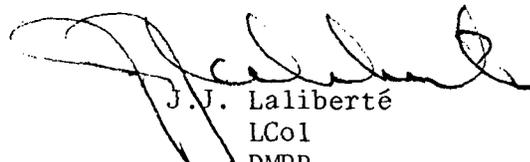
- a. A Commander of Divisional Medical Services (CDMS) will command second line medical support which will normally consist of four field ambulances. These units are responsible to provide second line medical

support to brigade size or equivalent formations and to reinforce or replace unit medical resources. Their main elements are:

- (a) An Administrative Company with an administrative platoon a logistics platoon and a communications platoon.
  - (b) A Treatment Company with three platoons responsible for staging patients during evacuation, providing sustaining care and holding patients for short terms when evacuation is interrupted.
  - (c) Evacuation Company which is responsible for evacuating patients from the unit medical stations to the treatment platoons and hospital facilities as well as augmenting or replacing unit medical stations. It contains four evacuation platoons, and two ambulance platoons. The latter two provide medical assistance for enroute medical care."
- e. The Dental portion of this present Serial 218 will have to be rewritten to reflect the deletion of the medical battalion.
  - f. Page 2-A1 Annex A to Chapter 2. Add to Corps line diagram "Med Bde" block as per CFP 303(2) Supplement 1.
  - g. Page 2-B1 Annex B to Chapter 2. Add to Division line diagram "Div Med Gp" block as per CFP 303(2) Supplement 1.
  - h. Page 3-24 serial 314 para 6 b. Combat Service Support Advisors are here detailed as to their command relationships. The last line states that in a division the Divisional Surgeon reports through the Commander Division Service Group (Comd DISGP). This should read "The CDMS has direct access to the Commander but usually works through the DCOS Adm.
  - j. Page 3-45 serial 321 para 4. Change the first line to read "Combat service support advisors with the exception of medical will be located in the brigade administrative area or the division administrative area."
  - k. Page 3-A1 Annex A to Chapter 3. The Med block should be represented in the same manner as the Comd DISGP.
  - m. Page 3-B1 Annex B to Chapter 3. The Bde Surg block should not be shown as reporting to the CO Svc Bn but in the same relationship as the CO Svc Bn.

.../3

- n. Page 4-189 serial 459 para 6. This paragraph should read  
"An independent brigade group has an integral service battalion  
and an integral field ambulance."
- p. Page 4-189 serial 460 para 2 a. First sentence should read  
"F echelon which contains the men, weapons, vehicles, integral  
medical support, supplies and equipment required to fight the  
battle."
- q. Page 4-201 serial 463 para 1. This paragraph should be deleted  
and the following included:
- "463. Medical
1. The commander of division medical services commands all  
medical elements in the divisional order of battle, organizes  
and implements the medical plan in consultation with the  
division staff, and acts as the division commander's adviser  
on medical matters. He has the technical control over all  
medical personnel in the division and in turn receives  
technical direction from the corps medical staff. He is  
under control of the DCOS(Adm) who has the responsibility  
to move, defend and locate divisional medical installations."
- r. Para 2 of this serial regarding dental should be rewritten to  
reflect a similar command relationship.
- s. Page 4-203 serial 464 para 2. Collection within a unit is detailed  
here however sentence three is disjointed and should read, "The  
casualties are evacuated directly to the Unit Medical Station  
established by the Unit Medical Platoon."
- t. Page 4-204 serial 464 para 5. Brigade Medical Station formation  
is discussed here however the first sentence should read, "and is  
formed by one or more platoons of the treatment company of the  
field ambulance".
- u. Para 6 of this same serial should read in the first sentence, "It  
is the responsibility of the CDMS through the DCOS (Adm) to plan  
the evacuation of casualties from the division area.

  
J.J. Laliberté  
LCol  
DMPR  
2-2392





Canadian Armed Forces  
Mobile Command

Forces armées canadiennes  
Force mobile



9345

FMC 2900-1 (CD)  
2910-CFP301 (1)

Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, P.Q.

J3X 5T5 NDRMS/CGDN 3-82

4 Dec 79 referred to  
Transmits à: *DLP4*

Distribution List

ADTB SECRETARIAT  
EXTRAORDINARY MEETING 30 NOV 79

DEC 10 1979  
File No  
Dossier No. 2910.CFP301-1  
Charité to/à: DG150PT3  
6/19/79

Reference: A. FMC 3189-1 (CD) 28 Nov 79

1. Comd FMC convened the subject meeting to brief members on the current doctrinal problems, particularly in the defence, faced by 4 CMBG in Europe today. The Comd also wished to be briefed on the status of production of CFP 301(1) Formations in Battle.
2. The Comd outlined the problems 4 CMBG faces in the defence arising from the wide variance in the defensive doctrines of US and GE, whose forces could be on both flanks of 4 CMBG. The Comd wished to ensure that our officers are familiar with allied defensive doctrines, but are taught Canadian defensive doctrine. He then questioned what exactly our defensive doctrine is.
3. SO Inf Doc summarized the "defence models" contained in the first draft of CFP 301(1). Briefing notes are at Annex D to Reference A. Considerable discussion followed.
4. It was evident that the defensive doctrine and terminology in CFP 301(1) (First Draft) requires considerable review. DCOS CD gave the following direction to the members indicated:
  - a. DLP-4. Advise author to prepare second draft of CFP 301(1) less Chapter 6. Revisions can be based on comments received in normal manner.
  - b. All members (but in particular CFCSC, CLFCSC, and 4 CMBG) - Detailed comments on CFP 301(1) Chapter 6 Defensive Operations are to be submitted to DCOS CD by 20 Dec 79. Submissions are to include as an Annex a list of terms and definitions which are considered incorrect, ambiguous, unnecessary, or in conflict with AAP-6.

② PA

1. The letter administratively reflects decisions reached at the meeting.

.../2

2. CLDO and DLP have seen.

3. Chapter 6 was resolved at subsequent meeting 19-21 Feb 80.

*Sal*  
DLP4  
28 Feb 80

-2-

- c. SSO CD Coord. Prepare agenda and summary of comments on Chapter 6 for ADTB Secretariat meeting in the week 18 - 22 Feb 80, exact time and location to be announced.

5. The Secretariat meeting scheduled for 18 Feb 80 is to provide clear direction to the author on the revision of Chapter 6, CFP 301(1). It is imperative that a common terminology be established at this time. Other doctrine matters may also be discussed.



J.T.F.A. Liston  
Colonel

Deputy Chief of Staff Combat Development  
for Commander

DISTRIBUTION LIST

Action

Information

External

External

CFCS - 2 (Director  
Land Studies)

CLDO *Copy sent down*

CFCS - 2 (DComdt)

Internal

→ DLP-4

Internal

DCOS Air (SSO Plans 10TAG)  
SSO CD Coord  
SO Doc Coord

Comd  
DComd  
COS Ops  
SSO Armd  
SSO Arty  
SSO Fd Engr  
SSO Inf  
SSO Comms  
SSO Cbt Svc Sp  
SSO I&S

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP301-1

~~2910-CFP 301(1)~~ (DMEP)

Dec 79

DLP 4

CFP 301(1) FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FIRST DRAFT

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP 4) 5 Oct 79

1. Detailed comments on the subject publication are attached.
2. Generally speaking the publication is too voluminous. In many areas it is repetitive from one section to another and vis a vis CFP 300. Most chapters could be condensed without affecting the "free standing" quality of the volume. As far as the engineer content is concerned, this publication often presents information contained in CFP 319 and in the specific case of assault water obstacle crossing, repeats information in CFP 320(11).
3. In many areas the writer dwells at a too low level if the aim of the publication is to deal with formations in battle. The method of designating artillery targets, individual measures to be taken by soldiers against chemical and nuclear weapons, are two examples of details which should not be found in this publication. Along the same lines, close to 15 pages are used to describe organization charts found in CFP 303(1) when reproduction of some of these organization charts would satisfy the need.
4. It is noted that the doctrine presented in this publication is based on the organizations of units and formations as described in CFP 303(1). These organizations were produced hastily and will require extensive amendment when the Combat Development Study is approved.

  
R.E. Moore

LCol  
DMEP  
2-8385

Attachment:

Annex A - Detailed Comments CFP 301(1)  
PC Joannette Maj/2-8385/bew

ANNEX A

TO: 2910-CFP 301(1) (DMEP)

DATED: 6 Dec 79

DETAILED COMMENTS

FIRST DRAFT - CFP 301(1)

| REFERENCE              | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION  |
|------------------------|---|--|
| p. 1-23,<br>para 114   | Suggest that tactics is a balanced combination of three functions: guard, hit and <u>reserves</u> as opposed to protect, strike and move.                                 | Moving is inherent in guarding and hitting and as such is not a separate function. Refer to The Canadian Infantry 1986-95 (Land Forces Combat Development Study 77 8-1) Final Report.                  |
| p. 2-1,<br>para 201, 3 | Mobilization could occur in the four phases mentioned. A comment to the effect that mobilization could also occur while by-passing one of the phases is perhaps required. | Mobilization could be implemented just as rapidly and effectively if the second phase was omitted. Indeed, omission of this phase would considerably expedite and simplify the mobilization process.   |
| p. 2-2,<br>para 202    | Consider adding the following requirements of a field force: Communications and Intelligence.   | Although these two requirements are mentioned in the description of the six existing requirements, their influence on the structure of a field formation is such that they deserve a separate heading. |
| p. 2-4,<br>para 204, 2 | Last line, delete " <u>bridging companies</u> "; insert " <u>amphibious engineer squadrons</u> ".   | To remain consistent with names of units provided in CFP 303(1).   |
| p. 2-2<br>para 202     | The term "maintenance" should be replaced by the more all encompassing "administration".  | To remain consistent with the term administration as found in p. 2-4, para 206.  |
| P. 2-5<br>para 207, 2  | Replace the expression "construction units" by "combat engineer units".   | There are no "construction units or sub-units" in the formations of CFP 301(1). Combat engineer units on the other hand do perform tasks to protect troops.  |

.../2

| REFERENCE                     | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| p. 2-11<br>para 210, 2        |  | As far as engineers (combat support arm) are concerned, the division is not the most <u>economical</u> formation to control certain assets. For example, bridging assets are more economically controlled at corps. |
| p. 2-17,<br>para 217, 2,3 & 8 | Either change the title "Combat Support Arms" or discuss armoured reconnaissance regiments, artillery and anti-tank battalion under another title.   | Armoured reconnaissance, artillery and anti-tank units are not combat <u>support</u> arms.  |
| p. 2-20,<br>para 217, 5a      | Last line; delete "medium", insert "multiple".   |   |
| p. 2-20,<br>para 217, 6a      | The division is responsible for low and <u>very low</u> level air defence.   |   |
| p. 2-23 to 2-27               | Delete "Field engineer regiments and field squadrons" and insert respectively "Combat engineer regiments and combat engineer squadrons" where applicable. This correction is also required elsewhere in this volume. | The latter names represent the approved name of engineer units. CFP 303(1) is also incorrect.   |
| p. 2-25,<br>para 217, 13a     | Reference to the "two MBT" should be investigated. Second last line delete "assault" insert "armoured".  | It is not normal for an armoured engineer squadron to have MBTs. AEVs are armoured engineer vehicles.   |
| 13b                           | Delete "main battle tanks" insert "AEVs". AEVs can perform other tasks than assist AVLBs, these should be mentioned.   | Depending on the type of vehicle that is selected, AEVs can have demolition guns, tow giant vipers or be equipped with ploughs/rollers.   |

.../3

| REFERENCE                     | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| p. 2-26,<br>para 217, 14c     | Delete definition of engineer plant, insert:<br>"Engineer plant are vehicles, both prime movers or towed, and their attachments which are primarily used by engineers for moving on treating earth. | CFP 319   |
| p. 2-26,<br>para 217, 14c     | Delete "minelayers, trench diggers and water supply equipment" and insert under resources troop, para 14.d. Correct statement at start of para 14.e.  | These are normally found in the resources troop.              |
| 14a                           | Delete all after "and can manufacture . . ."  | Resources troop personnel cannot manufacture engineer stores. |
| p. 2-42,<br>para 26, a        | Add as new sub-para (8) "Deliver scatterable mines." This same comment should also be inserted in the following pages at the appropriate places: page 4-151 and p. 5-60.                            | Self-explanatory.   |
| p. 2-A1 to 2-D1               | Add the "mechanized symbol" under the engineer sign in all charts.  | Engineers in these formations are mechanized units/sub-units. |
| p. 3-11,<br>para 308, 9       | The fact that the command relationship used most offer to describe engineers (ie. in support) should be mentioned in this para.   |   |
| p. 3-26,<br>para 315, 3a, (9) | Delete sentence and add "distribution of maps".   | Engineers are responsible for survey and production of maps.  |

.../4

| REFERENCE                    | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION  |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| p. 3-22,<br>para 314         | Division staff should include a "Civil Affairs staff"   | This function of a division staff has been entirely omitted from the description of the division staff. Annex A to Chapter 3 should also be amended.                 |
| p. 3-35,<br>para 317, 2a     | Delete the first sentence and add: "The Commander Divisional Engineer (CDE) commands <u>the engineer units in the division</u> and advises . . ." | The CDE commands all engineer units in the division and not just the division engineer regiment.   |
| 2b (4)                       | Delete at the end of the sentence "engineer tradesmen".   |  |
| 2b (5)                       | Add new sub-para "the engineer administrative staff".   |  |
| p. 3-44,<br>para 321, 3b     | Delete sentence and add "The CO or in his absence an LO from the supporting combat engineer squadron."  | There should always be an engineer officer at brigade/brigade group headquarters. Since the CO cannot spend all of his time there, he is replaced by an engineer LO. |
| p. 3-47,<br>para 323, 1a (6) | Delete the portion of this sub-para that deals with engineers and insert a new sub-para "an engineer staff."                                      | There will always be an engineer staff (the CDEs) present at division main headquarters even when the CDE is located with the tactical command post.                 |
| p. 3-B1                      | Under combat support advisors delete "CO Fd Engr Regt", insert "CO Cbt Engr Sqn".   | According to CFP 303(1) a squadron, not a regiment supports a brigade.   |
| p. 4-199,<br>para 461, 14    | Delete "Military Engineers" insert "Combat Engineers"   |  |
| p. 4-219,<br>para 471, 3     | This section on movement through construction should be cross-referenced with section 3 of Chapter 8 which deals with two such examples.          |  |

.../5



| REFERENCE                    | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION   |
|------------------------------|--|---|
| p. 5-52,<br>para 512, a. & e | Delete first sentence and insert following:<br>"When minor obstacles are to be overcome, engineers may be placed under command of brigades. When major obstacles are foreseen however, engineers should be placed in support of brigades as such an operation would likely be centrally controlled at division". |   |
| p. 5-58,<br>para 512, 15a    | Delete sentence and insert: "Natural and artificial obstacle crossing including clearing minefield lanes".   | One does not clear <u>gaps</u> in enemy minefields but rather lanes. Gaps are unmined areas in friendly minefields to permit friendly passage of troops in tactical formations. |
| 15d                          | Delete sentence and insert: "Clearance and construction of helicopter landing zones".  | Engineer units do not select air strips. The construction of air strips would not normally be performed by division engineer units.   |
| 15e                          | Add new task "creation of obstacles to protect the flanks and troops that have siezed an objective to help defend against an enemy counter-attack (such as mines, anti-tank ditches, craters, demolition of bridges, etc.)".   | The creation of obstacles in support of an attack is an often overlooked task of engineer units in this phase of war.   |
| p. 5-89,<br>para 519, 4c     | Delete "scattered mines" insert "nuisance minefields"  | The expression "scattered mines" has a specific meaning in the light of scatterable mines.  |

.../6

| REFERENCE                | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION   |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| p. 6-39,<br>para 614, 5  | A comment along the following lines should be added to this para when referring to friendly loss of mobility vis-à-vis minefields. The advent of scatterable mines with inherent self-destruct mechanisms will alleviate and considerably reduce this specific problem. Delete "defensive minefields" insert "tactical minefields". | Scatterable mines with self-destruct abilities expressed in hours and days will permit all the mines in a minefield to self-destruct at a predetermined time, allowing the safe passage of friendly forces. |
| p. 6-40,<br>para 614     | Delete "obstacle plan" insert "barrier plan".   | The sum of individual obstacles forms the "barrier plan". This expression should be used throughout para 614 where appropriate.   |
| p. 6-40,<br>para 614, 7a | Delete "corps engineer" and insert "Commander corps engineers (CCE)" when referring to this appointment. Make corrections where applicable in para 614.   |   |
| p. 6-40,<br>para 614, 7a | Third sentence, after "the operation staff" add "in conjunction with the engineer staff, will determine priorities".  | In fact, it is the engineer staff which will forecast requirements and suggest the allocation of resources which the operations staff will promulgate.  |
| 7a                       | Fourth sentence, delete and insert: "Based on the corps commander's outline barrier plan, the corps engineer staff will produce a barrier overlay/trace".   | The existing sentence is too restrictive in that it leaves the misleading impression that only minefields are included in the corps barrier plan.   |

.../7

| REFERENCE                                  | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION   |
|--|---|---|
| <p>p. 6-41,<br/>para 614, 7b</p> <p>7c</p> | <p>Last sentence, delete and insert: "The CDE will produce a map overlay/trace for the divisional barrier plan, in consultation with interested subordinate commanders".</p> <p>Second sentence, delete "minefields" insert "obstacles".</p>  | <p>Obstacles other than minefields must be dealt with in the same manner.</p>   |
| <p>p. 6-42,<br/>para 614, 8a (2)</p>       | <p>Delete definition and insert: "A minefield laid to conform with the formation barrier plan to delay, channel, or breakup an enemy advance".</p>  | <p>CFP 319</p>  |
| <p>p. 6-42,<br/>para 614, 8c</p>           | <p>Delete first sentence and insert: "Mines may be buried by hand or minelayers or laid on the surface by helicopter, artillery guns, rockets aircraft, and ground dispensers. They may be laid following a set pattern or emplaced without regard to classical patterns as is the case for scatterable mines".</p> |   |
| <p>p. 6-43,<br/>para 614, 8d</p>           | <p>Add at the end of this para: "Full use of the self-destruct feature of scatterable mines will reduce this problem".</p>  |   |
| <p>p. 6-45,<br/>para 614, 8f (3) (b)</p>   | <p>Delete sentence, insert: "evaluate the logistic aspect of producing minefields including the transportation and delivery of mines to laying units".</p>  |   |
| <p>p. 6-45,<br/>para 614, 9a</p>           | <p>The last sentence of this para should be removed.</p>  | <p>The distance between the obstacle and defensive positions should not be such that the enemy will have to cross his artillery to reach friendly forces. With the range of indirect fire weapons, this would mean a distance of some 18 kms?</p> |

| REFERENCE  | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION  |
|--|--|--|
| <p>p. 6-57,<br/>para 616, 3a</p> <p>3a (6)</p> <p>3b</p> <p>3b (6)</p> | <p>Add the following tasks:</p> <p>(7) provide demolition firing parties;</p> <p>(8) dig anti-tank ditches;</p> <p>(9) provide support for ADMs.</p> <p>Add the following comment: "(to include the provision of assault/support bridges)".</p> <p>Add the following tasks:</p> <p>(9) provide protective digging for vehicles and personnel;</p> <p>(10) build anti-tank ditches;</p> <p>(11) provide potable water.</p> <p>Delete comment.</p> | <p>Engineers are not responsible for the provision of defence stores.</p>  |
| <p>p. 6-108,<br/>para 630, 2</p>                                       | <p>Add an additional consideration:</p> <p>g. ensuring that a reserve of bridging equipment is held well forward to replace bridges that might be demolished through enemy action.</p>   |  |
| <p>p. 6-132,<br/>para 340, 4</p>                                       | <p>Third sentence, delete and insert: "Demolition firing parties are required for all reserved demolitions and occasionally for preliminary demolitions".</p>  | <p>Preliminary demolitions are normally blown immediately after preparation by the engineer section responsible for that obstacle and thus does not always require a demolition firing party per se.</p> |

.../9

| REFERENCE                                      | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION  |
|--|--|--|
| <p>p. 8-31,<br/>para 808, 6(3)</p> <p>6(6)</p> | <p>Delete comments, insert: "Strengthening and demolition of buildings".</p> <p>Add additional task: "Restore or destroy utilities such as water, gas, electricity, etc.".</p> |  |
| <p>p. 8-33,<br/>para 810,.1</p>                | <p>Second sentence, after "Crossing operations are conducted over" add, "dry gaps or".</p>   |  |
| <p>p. 8-41A</p>                                | <p>Under the footnotes - delete reference to "Engineer Bridge Pre-assembly Areas".</p>   | <p>This is a left-over requirement of the old Light Floating Bridge which called for such an area. Modern bridges do not call for a similar requirement.</p> |
|  | <p>Delete "Tank Ferry Sites" insert "Ferry Site".</p>  | <p>Ferries are not used to transport tanks only.</p>   |
| <p>p. 8-56,<br/>para 812, 11d</p>              | <p>After APC swimming add "fording, deep wading".</p>  |  |
| <p>p. 8-58,<br/>para 812, 15</p>               | <p>Add new sub-para e. - "Be part of the assaulting unit/formation and breakthrough formation".</p>  |  |
| <p>p. 8-58,<br/>para 812 15d</p>               |  | <p>Perhaps the German Water Zone Concept should be mentioned here. Under this concept the bank group is based on engineer units.</p>                         |
| <p>p. 8-60,<br/>para 812, 17e</p>              | <p>Delete para.</p>  | <p>The Aluminum Infantry Floating Footbridge is being removed from inventory.</p>  |

.../10

| REFERENCE                 | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION   |
|---------------------------|---|---|
| 17f                       | Delete para.  | Although the bank group is normally provided by the unit holding the near bank, it is essentially a control organization. It would not itself provide fire support.   |
| 17g                       | Add "pathfinders".  |   |
| 17h                       | Add a new sub-para referring to air defence weapons.  | Under the German concept, the bank group would control point air defence of bridge and ferry sites. Who would control similar resources in our context?   |
| p. 8-61B                  | The diagram on the left - delete "outrigging and pre-assembly areas".                               | These refer to older type bridges which are not reflected in CFP 303(1). In fact, the left and right diagrams could be combined or to a single one which would incorporate a Bridge Marshalling Harbour, Waiting and Cushion areas, and a construction site.  |
| p. 8-62,<br>para 812, 21f | Delete "Heavy".   | Heavy ferry refers to a specific type of bridging equipment.  |
| p. 8-63,<br>para 813, 1   | Third sentence, after surprise add "and their presence can cause vehicle and personnel casualties". |   |
| p. 8-65,<br>para 813, 6   |   | The case in favour of hand breaching is too strong. The tempo of operations <u>will</u> mitigate against the use of such a technique and the surveillance and night vision aids of the enemy will foil any such attempt. If this technique has to be mentioned, it should deserve no more than a "three liner". |

.../11

| REFERENCE                            | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION  |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| p. 8-66,<br>para 813, 7              | A new sub-para c. should be added to this para to describe the flail tank which is the single most efficient way of clearing a minefield.  |  |
| p. 8-68,<br>para 813, 8c             | Second sentence delete "aircraft, missiles and guns" insert "rockets". Delete "all mines" insert "single impulse pressure activated mines".  | Fuel air explosives will only be delivered by rockets such as the (US) SLUFAE. This technique will <u>not</u> neutralize <u>all</u> types of mines.  |
| p. 8-68,<br>para 813, 10b<br><br>10e | After mines insert "fuzes".<br><br>Delete "including Assault Vehicles Royal Engineers (AVREs) and Giant Vipers".   |  |
| p. 8-68,<br>para 813, 10             | At the end of this para should be included a comment to the effect that the best and most effective method of breaching a minefield is one which incorporates two or more of the breaching methods described in preceding paras. |  |
| p. 8-71;<br>para 813, 12             | Reverse the statement in the second sentence.  | Reconnaissance elements will be the first to encounter enemy minefields. It is their responsibility to define the extent and locate bypasses if possible.  |
| p. 8-73,<br>para 813, 15             | AEV and breaching devices required are incorrect.  | For a brigade minefield breach assuming two battle groups in the assault, four lanes have to be attempted. Assuming that the minefield is 200 meters deep, the following is required (for a 400 meter deep minefield the number of Giant Vipers must be increased by one third): |

| REFERENCE  | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION  |
|--|--|--|
| p. 8-74,<br>para 813, 16a<br><br>p. 8-75,<br>para 813, 17a<br><br>p. 8-76,<br>para 813, 18b<br><br>18c | The breaching force also requires AD protection.<br><br>Delete.<br><br>Delete "by hand".<br><br>Add "or SLUF AE, or ploughs/rollers, or flails". | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- eight Giant Vipers,</li><li>- four AEVs with rollers or ploughs,</li><li>- two combat engineer troops.</li></ul> <p>If the minefield is reinforced with tank ditches then AVLBS and additional AEVs are required. If SLUF AE is used then four would be required with four AEVs. If flail tanks are used, then four are required.</p> <p>The time requirement and an enemy observation device make this option unrealistic.</p> <p>After having mentioned other breaching devices at the start of this section, they have been dropped except for the Giant Viper.</p> |



9

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301-1

~~2910-CFP 301(1)~~ DLR 8)

6 <sup>Dec</sup> Nov 79

DLP 4

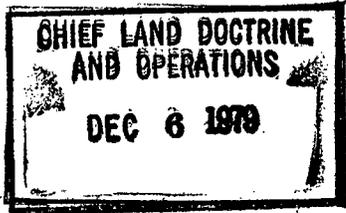
COMMENTS - CFP 301(1) - FIRST DRAFT

Reference: 2910-CLP 301(1) (DLP 4) 5 Oct 79

1. Attached are comments, in format requested in Reference, prepared from staff review of draft CFP 301(1). Attached comments apply primarily to artillery, communications and general battlefield surveillance.
2. One major item of concern not reflected in the specific comments concerns the classification of artillery as combat support rather than a combat arm. The long term implications of this change are most disturbing.
3. It should be noted that in the short time since the author left the Forces, significant changes have evolved and continue to evolve in the air defence and target acquisition fields. It is important that these changes be understood and be consistently reflected throughout the publication.

  
H. Stein  
Col  
DLR  
2-3239

Attachment  
GR Smith Maj/DLR 8/5-8776/lb



76

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301(1) (DMEP)

Dec 79

DLP 4

CFP 301(1) FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FIRST DRAFT

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP 4) 5 Oct 79

1. Detailed comments on the subject publication are attached.
2. Generally speaking the publication is too voluminous. In many areas it is repetitive from one section to another and vis a vis CFP 300. Most chapters could be condensed without affecting the "free standing" quality of the volume. As far as the engineer content is concerned, this publication often presents information contained in CFP 319 and in the specific case of assault water obstacle crossing, repeats information in CFP 320(11).
3. In many areas the writer dwells at a too low level if the aim of the publication is to deal with formations in battle. The method of designating artillery targets, individual measures to be taken by soldiers against chemical and nuclear weapons, are two examples of details which should not be found in this publication. Along the same lines, close to 15 pages are used to describe organization charts found in CFP 303(1) when reproduction of some of these organization charts would satisfy the need.
4. It is noted that the doctrine presented in this publication is based on the organizations of units and formations as described in CFP 303(1). These organizations were produced hastily and will require extensive amendment when the Combat Development Study is approved.

  
R.E. MOORE  
LCol  
DMEP  
2-8385

Attachment:

Annex A - Detailed Comments CFP 301(1)

ANNEX A

TO: 2910-CFP 301(1) (DMEP)

DATED: 6 Dec 79

DETAILED COMMENTS

FIRST DRAFT - CFP 301(1)

| REFERENCE                | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION  |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| ① p. 1-23,<br>para 114   | Suggest that tactics is a balanced combination of three functions: guard, hit and <u>reserves</u> as opposed to protect, strike and move.                                 | Moving is inherent in guarding and hitting and as such is not a separate function. Refer to The Canadian Infantry 1986-95 (Land Forces Combat Development Study 77 8-1) Final Report. 2                  |
| ② p. 2-1,<br>para 201, 3 | Mobilization could occur in the four phases mentioned. A comment to the effect that mobilization could also occur while by-passing one of the phases is perhaps required. | Mobilization could be implemented just as rapidly and effectively if the second phase was omitted. Indeed, omission of this phase would considerably expedite and simplify the mobilization process. ✓   |
| ③ p. 2-2,<br>para 202    | Consider adding the following requirements of a field force: Communications and Intelligence.   | Although these two requirements are mentioned in the description of the six existing requirements, their influence on the structure of a field formation is such that they deserve a separate heading. X |
| ④ p. 2-4,<br>para 204, 2 | Last line, delete " <u>bridging companies</u> ", insert " <u>amphibious engineer squadrons</u> ".   | To remain consistent with names of units provided in CFP 303(1). ✓   |
| ⑤ p. 2-2<br>para 202     | The term "maintenance" should be replaced by the more all encompassing "administration".  | To remain consistent with the term administration as found in p. 2-4, para 206. ✓  |
| P. 2-5<br>para 207, 2    | Replace the expression "construction units" by "combat engineer units".   | There are no "construction units or sub-units" in the formations of CFP 301(1). Combat engineer units on the other hand do perform tasks to protect troops. ✓  |

.../2

| REFERENCE                                   | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION  |
|---|---|--|
| <p>6 p. 2-11<br/>para 210, 2</p>            |   | <p>As far as engineers (combat support arm) are concerned, the division is not the most <u>economical</u> formation to control certain assets. For example, bridging assets are more economically controlled at corps.</p> |
| <p>7 p. 2-17,<br/>para 217, 2,3 &amp; 8</p> | <p>Either change the title "Combat Support Arms" or discuss armoured reconnaissance regiments, artillery and anti-tank battalion under another title.</p>   | <p>Armoured reconnaissance, artillery and anti-tank units are not combat <u>support</u> arms.</p>  |
| <p>8 p. 2-20,<br/>para 217, 5a</p>          | <p>Last line; delete "medium", insert "multiple".</p>   |  |
| <p>9 p. 2-20,<br/>para 217, 6a</p>          | <p>The division is responsible for low and <u>very low</u> level air defence.</p>   |  |
| <p>10 p. 2-23 to 2-27</p>                   | <p>Delete "Field engineer regiments and field squadrons" and insert respectively "Combat engineer regiments and combat engineer squadrons" where applicable. This correction is also required elsewhere in this volume.</p> | <p>The latter names represent the approved name of engineer units. CFP 303(1) is also incorrect.</p>   |
| <p>11 p. 2-25,<br/>para 217, 13a</p>        | <p>Reference to the "two MBT" should be investigated. Second last line delete "assault" insert "armoured".</p>  | <p>It is not normal for an armoured engineer squadron to have MBTs. AEVs are armoured engineer vehicles.</p>   |
| <p>12 13b</p>                               | <p>Delete "in battle tanks" insert "AEVs". AEVs can perform other tasks than assist AVLBs, these should be mentioned.</p>   | <p>Depending on the type of vehicle that is selected, AEVs can have demolition guns, tow giant vipers or be equipped with ploughs/rollers.</p>   |

.../3

| REFERENCE  | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION  |
|--|--|--|
| <p>13<br/>                     p. 2-26,<br/>                     para 217, 14c</p>     | <p>Delete definition of engineer plant, insert:<br/>                     "Engineer plant are vehicles, both prime movers or towed, and their attachments which are primarily used by engineers for moving on treating earth.</p> | <p>CFP 319 ✓</p>   |
| <p>p. 2-26,<br/>                     para 217, 14c<br/>                     14c</p>    | <p>Delete "minelayers, trench diggers and water supply equipment" and insert under resources troop, para 14.d. Correct statement at start of para 14.e.</p>  | <p>These are normally found in the resources troop. ✓</p>                          |
| <p>15<br/>                     14d</p>   | <p>Delete all after "and can manufacture . . ."</p>  | <p>Resources troop personnel cannot manufacture engineer stores. ✓</p>             |
| <p>16<br/>                     p. 2-42,<br/>                     para 26, a</p>        | <p>Add as new sub-para (8) "Deliver scatterable mines." This same comment should also be inserted in the following pages at the appropriate places: page 4-151 and p. 5-60.</p>  | <p>Self-explanatory. ✓✓✓</p>   |
| <p>17<br/>                     p. 2-A1 to 2-D1</p>                                     | <p>Add the "mechanized symbol" under the engineer sign in all charts.</p>  | <p>Engineers in these formations are mechanized units/sub-units. ✓</p>             |
| <p>18<br/>                     p. 3-11,<br/>                     para 308, 9</p>       | <p>The fact that the command relationship used most offer to describe engineers (ie. in support) should be mentioned in this para.</p>   | <p>✓</p>   |
| <p>19<br/>                     p. 3-26,<br/>                     para 315, 3a, (9)</p> | <p>Delete sentence and add "distribution of maps".</p>   | <p>Engineers are responsible for survey and production of maps. ✓</p> <p>.../4</p> |

| REFERENCE                                   | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION   |
|---|---|---|
| <p>20<br/>p. 3-22,<br/>para 314</p>         | <p>Division staff should include a "Civil Affairs staff"</p>  | <p>This function of a division staff has been entirely omitted from the description of the division staff. Annex A to Chapter 3 should also be amended.</p>                 |
| <p>21<br/>p. 3-35,<br/>para 317, 2a</p>     | <p>Delete the first sentence and add: "The Commander Divisional Engineer (CDE) commands <u>the engineer units in the division</u> and advises . . ."</p>    | <p>The CDE commands all engineer units in the division and not just the division engineer regiment.</p>   |
| <p>22<br/>2b (4)</p>                        | <p>Delete at the end of the sentence "engineer tradesmen".</p>  |   |
| <p>23<br/>2b (5)</p>                        | <p>Add new sub-para "the engineer administrative staff"</p>   |   |
| <p>24<br/>p. 3-44,<br/>para 321, 3b</p>     | <p>Delete sentence and add "The CO or in his absence an LO from the supporting combat engineer squadron."</p>   | <p>There should always be an engineer officer at brigade/brigade group headquarters. Since the CO cannot spend all of his time there, he is replaced by an engineer LO.</p> |
| <p>25<br/>p. 3-47,<br/>para 323, 1a (6)</p> | <p>Delete the portion of this sub-para that deals with engineers and insert a new sub-para "an engineer staff:"</p>   | <p>There will always be an engineer staff (the CDEs) present at division main headquarters even when the CDE is located with the tactical command post.</p>                 |
| <p>26<br/>p. 3-B1</p>                       | <p>Under combat support advisors delete "CO Fd Engr Regt", insert "CO Cbt Engr Sqn".</p>  | <p>According to CFP 303(1) a squadron, not a regiment supports a brigade.</p>   |
| <p>27<br/>p. 4-199,<br/>para 461, 14</p>    | <p>Delete "Military Engineers" insert "Combat Engineers"</p>  |   |
| <p>28<br/>p. 4-219,<br/>para 471, 3</p>     | <p>This section on movement through construction<sup>s</sup> should be cross-referenced with section 3 of Chapter 8 which deals with two such examples.</p> | <p>.../5</p>  |

| REFERENCE   | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>29<br/>p. 5-52, 9<br/>para 512, a. &amp; e</p> | <p>Delete first sentence and insert following:<br/>"When minor obstacles are to be overcome, engineers may be placed under command of b brigades. When major obstacles are foreseen however, engineers should be placed in support of brigades as such an operation would likely be centrally controlled at division".</p> |  |
| <p>30<br/>p. 5-58,<br/>para 512, 15a</p>          | <p>Delete sentence and insert: "Natural and artificial obstacle crossing including clearing minefield lanes".</p>  | <p>One does not clear <u>gaps</u> in enemy minefields but rather lanes. Gaps are unmined areas in friendly minefields to permit friendly passage of troops in tactical formations.</p> |
| <p>31<br/>15d</p>                                 | <p>Delete sentence and insert: "Clearance and construction of helicopter landing zones".</p>   | <p>Engineer units do not select air strips. The construction of air strips would not normally be performed by division engineer units.</p>   |
| <p>32<br/>15e</p>                                 | <p>Add new task "creation of obstacles to protect the flanks and troops that have siezed an objective to help defend against an enemy counter-attack (such as mines, anti-tank ditches, craters, demolition of bridges, etc.)".</p>  | <p>The creation of obstacles in support of an attack is an often overlooked task of engineer units in this phase of war.</p>   |
| <p>33<br/>p. 5-89,<br/>para 519, 4c</p>           | <p>Delete "scattered mines" insert "nuisance minefields"</p>   | <p>The expression "scattered mines" has a specific meaning in the light of scatterable mines.</p>  |

.../6

| REFERENCE                           | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION   |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| <p>34 P. 6-39,<br/>para 614, 5</p>  | <p>A comment along the following lines should be added to this para when referring to friendly loss of mobility vis-a-vis minefields. The advent of scatterable mines with inherent self-destruct mechanisms will alleviate and considerably reduce this specific problem. Delete "defensive minefields" insert "tactical minefields".</p> | <p>Scatterable mines with self-destruct abilities expressed in hours and days will permit all the mines in a minefield to self-destruct at a predetermined time, allowing the safe passage of friendly forces.<br/><i>Comment - counters emphasis</i></p> |
| <p>35 P. 6-40,<br/>para 614</p>     | <p>Delete "obstacle plan" insert "barrier plan".</p>   | <p>The sum of individual obstacles forms the "barrier plan". This expression should be used throughout para 614 where appropriate.</p>  |
| <p>36 P. 6-40,<br/>para 614, 7a</p> | <p>Delete "corps engineer" and insert "Commander corps engineers (CCE)" when referring to this appointment. Make corrections where applicable in para 614.</p>   | <p></p>   |
| <p>37 P. 6-40,<br/>para 614, 7a</p> | <p>Third sentence, after "the operation staff" add "in conjunction with the engineer staff, will determine priorities".</p>  | <p>In fact, it is the engineer staff which will forecast requirements and suggest the allocation of resources which the operations staff will promulgate.</p>   |
| <p>38 7a</p>                        | <p>Fourth sentence, delete and insert: "Based on the corps commander's outline barrier plan, the corps engineer staff will produce a barrier overlay/trace".</p>   | <p>The existing sentence is too restrictive in that it leaves the misleading impression that only minefields are included in the corps barrier plan.</p>  |

X  
✓  
✓  
✓

.../7

| REFERENCE                           | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION  |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| 39 p. 6-41,<br>para 614, 7b         | Last sentence, delete and insert: "The CDE will produce a map overlay/trace for the divisional barrier plan, in consultation with interested subordinate commanders".  |  |
| 40 7c                               | Second sentence, delete "minefields" insert "obstacles".   | Obstacles other than minefields must be dealt with in the same manner.   |
| 41 p. 6-42,<br>para 614, 8a (2)     | Delete definition and insert: "A minefield laid to conform with the formation barrier plan to delay, channel, or breakup an enemy advance".  | CFP 319  |
| 42 p. 6-42,<br>para 614, 8c         | Delete first sentence and insert: "Mines may be buried by hand or minelayers or laid on the surface by helicopter, artillery guns, rockets aircraft, and ground dispensers. They may be laid following a set pattern or emplaced without regard to classical patterns as is the case for scatterable mines". |  |
| 43 p. 6-43,<br>para 614, 8d         | Add at the end of this para: "Full use of the self-destruct feature of scatterable mines will reduce this problem".  |  |
| 44 p. 6-45,<br>para 614, 8f (3) (b) | Delete sentence, insert: "evaluate the logistic aspect of producing minefields including the transportation and delivery of mines to laying units".  |  |
| 45 p. 6-45,<br>para 614, 9a         | The last sentence of this para should be removed.  | The distance between the obstacle and defensive positions should not be such that the enemy will have to cross his artillery to reach friendly forces. With the range of indirect fire weapons, this would mean a distance of some 18 kms? |

| REFERENCE                                 | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>(46)<br/>p. 6-57,<br/>para 616, 3a</p> | <p>Add the following tasks:<br/>                     (7) provide demolition firing parties;<br/>                     (8) dig anti-tank ditches;<br/>                     (9) provide support for ADMs.</p> |  |
| <p>(47) 3a (6)</p>                        | <p>Add the following comment: "(to include the provision of assault/support bridges)".</p>   |  |
| <p>3b</p>                                 | <p>Add the following tasks:</p>  |  |
| <p>(48)</p>                               | <p>(9) provide protective digging for vehicles and personnel;<br/>                     (10) build anti-tank ditches;<br/>                     (11) provide potable water.</p>                              |  |
| <p>(49) 3b (6)</p>                        | <p>Delete comment.</p>   | <p>Engineers are not responsible for the provision of defence stores.</p>  |
| <p>(50) p. 6-108,<br/>para 630, 2</p>     | <p>Add an additional consideration:<br/>                     g. ensuring that a reserve of bridging equipment is held well forward to replace bridges that might be demolished through enemy action.</p>   |  |
| <p>(51) p. 6-132,<br/>para 340, 4</p>     | <p>Third sentence, delete and insert: "Demolition firing parties are required for all reserved demolitions and occasionally for preliminary demolitions".</p>  | <p>Preliminary demolitions are normally blown immediately after preparation by the engineer section responsible for that obstacle and thus does not always require a demolition firing party per se.</p> |

.../9

| REFERENCE                             | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION   |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| <p>52 p. 8-31,<br/>para 808, 6(3)</p> | <p>Delete comments, insert: "Strengthening and demolition of buildings".</p>                        | <p>✓</p>  |
| <p>53 6(6)</p>                        | <p>Add additional task: "Restore or destroy utilities such as water, gas, electricity, etc.".</p>   | <p>✓</p>  |
| <p>54 p. 8-33,<br/>para 810, 1</p>    | <p>Second sentence, after "Crossing operations are conducted over" add, "dry gaps or".</p>          |   |
| <p>55 P. 8-41A</p>                    | <p>Under the footnotes:- delete reference to "Engineer Bridge Pre-assembly Areas".</p>              | <p>This is a left-over requirement of the old Light Floating Bridge which called for such an area. Modern bridges do not call for a similar requirement.</p> <p>✓</p> |
| <p>56</p>                             | <p>Delete "Tank Ferry Sites" insert "Ferry Site".</p>   | <p>Ferries are not used to transport tanks only.</p> <p>✓</p>   |
| <p>57 p. 8-56,<br/>para 812, 11d</p>  | <p>After APC swimming add "fording, deep wading".</p>   | <p>✓</p>  |
| <p>58 p. 8-58,<br/>para 812, 15</p>   | <p>Add new sub-para e. - "Be part of the assaulting unit/formation and breakthrough formation".</p> | <p>✓</p>  |
| <p>59 p. 8-58,<br/>para 812 15d</p>   |   | <p>Perhaps the German Water Zone Concept should be mentioned here. Under this concept the bank group is based on engineer units.</p> <p>✗</p>                         |
| <p>60 p. 8-60,<br/>para 812, 17e</p>  | <p>Delete para.</p>   | <p>The Aluminum Infantry Floating Footbridge is being removed from inventory.</p> <p>✗</p>  |

.../10

| REFERENCE                            | RECOMMENDATIONS  | EXPLANATION  |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| <p>61 17f</p>                        | <p>Delete para.</p>  | <p>Although the bank group is normally provided by the unit holding the near bank, it is essentially a control organization. It would not itself provide fire support. ✓</p>   |
| <p>62 17g<br/>17h</p>                | <p><i>engineer</i><br/>Add "pathfinders".<br/>Add a new sub-para referring to air defence weapons.</p>       | <p><i>already incl - "guides"</i> ✗<br/>Under the German concept, the bank group would control point air defence of bridge and ferry sites. Who would control similar resources in our context? ✗</p>  |
| <p>63 p. 8-61B</p>                   | <p>The diagram on the left - delete "outrigging and pre-assembly areas".</p>                                 | <p>These refer to older type bridges which are not reflected in CFP 303(1). In fact, the left and right diagrams could be combined or to a single one which would incorporate a Bridge Marshalling Harbour, Waiting and Cushion areas, and a construction site. ✓</p>  |
| <p>64 p. 8-62,<br/>para 812, 21f</p> | <p>Delete "Heavy".</p>   | <p>Heavy ferry refers to a specific type of bridging equipment. ✓</p>  |
| <p>65 p. 8-63,<br/>para 813, 1</p>   | <p>Third sentence, after surprise add "and their presence can cause vehicle and personnel casualties". ✓</p> | <p></p>  |
| <p>66 p. 8-65,<br/>para 813, 6</p>   | <p></p>  | <p>The case in favour of hand breaching is too strong. The tempo of operations <u>will</u> mitigate against the use of such a technique and the surveillance and night vision aids of the enemy will foil any such attempt. If this technique has to be mentioned, it should deserve no more than a "three liner". ✓</p> |

| REFERENCE  | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION  |
|--|---|--|
| <p>67<br/>                     p. 8-66,<br/>                     para 813, 7</p>   | <p>A new sub-para c. should be added to this para to describe the flail tank which is the single most efficient way of clearing a minefield.</p>  | <p>✓</p>   |
| <p>68<br/>                     p. 8-68,<br/>                     para 813, 8c</p>  | <p>Second sentence delete "aircraft, missiles and guns" insert "rockets". Delete "all mines" insert "single impulse pressure activated mines".</p>  | <p>Fuel air explosives will only be delivered by rockets such as the (US) SLUFAE. This technique will <u>not</u> neutralize <u>all</u> types of mines.</p> <p>✓</p>  |
| <p>69<br/>                     p. 8-68,<br/>                     para 813, 10b</p> | <p>After mines insert "fuzes".</p>  | <p>✓</p>   |
| <p>70<br/>                     10e</p>   | <p>Delete "including Assault Vehicles Royal Engineers (AVREs) and Giant Vipers".</p>  | <p>✓</p>   |
| <p>71<br/>                     p. 8-68,<br/>                     para 813, 10</p>  | <p>At the end of this para should be included a comment to the effect that the best and most effective method of breaching a minefield is one which incorporates two or more of the breaching methods described in preceding paras.</p> | <p>✓</p>   |
| <p>72<br/>                     p. 8-71,<br/>                     para 813, 12</p>  | <p>Reverse the statement in the second sentence.</p>  | <p>Reconnaissance elements will be the first to encounter enemy minefields. It is their responsibility to define the extent and locate bypasses if possible.</p> <p>✓</p>  |
| <p>73<br/>                     p. 8-73,<br/>                     para 813, 15</p>  | <p>AEV and breaching devices required are incorrect.</p>  | <p>For a brigade minefield breach assuming two battle groups in the assault, four lanes have to be attempted. Assuming that the minefield is 200 meters deep, the following is required (for a 400 meter deep minefield the number of Giant Vipers must be increased by one third):</p> <p>✓</p> |

| REFERENCE                            | RECOMMENDATIONS   | EXPLANATION   |
|--------------------------------------|---|---|
|                                      |   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- eight Giant Vipers,</li><li>- four AEVs with rollers or ploughs,</li><li>- two combat engineer troops.</li></ul> <p>If the minefield is reinforced with tank ditches then AVLBS and additional AEVs are required. If SLUF AE is used then four would be required with four AEVs. If flail tanks are used, then four are required.</p> |
| ①74 p. 8-74,<br>para 813, 16a        | The breaching force also requires AD protection.                      |   |
| ①75 p. 8-75,<br>para 813, 17a        | Delete.   | The time requirement and an enemy observation device make this option unrealistic. ✓  |
| ①76 p. 8-76,<br>para 813, 18b<br>18c | Delete "by hand".<br>Add "or SLUF AE, or ploughs/rollers, or flails". | After having mentioned other breaching devices at the start of this section, they have been dropped except for the Giant Viper. ✓   |

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301(1) DLR 8)

6 <sup>Dec</sup> ~~Nov~~ 79

DLP 4

COMMENTS - CFP 301(1) - FIRST DRAFT

Reference: 2910-CLP 301(1) (DLP 4) 5 Oct 79

1. Attached are comments, in format requested in Reference, prepared from staff review of draft CFP 301(1). Attached comments apply primarily to artillery, communications and general battlefield surveillance.
2. One major item of concern not reflected in the specific comments concerns the classification of artillery as combat support rather than a combat arm. The long term implications of this change are most disturbing.
3. It should be noted that in the short time since the author left the Forces, significant changes have evolved and continue to evolve in the air defence and target acquisition fields. It is important that these changes be understood and be consistently reflected throughout the publication.

  
H.J. Stein  
Col  
DLR  
2-3239

Attachment

Hutch  
These comments were prepared by Arty Study Team. They probably reflect the future to an extent that may not be appropriate for the present.  
Dick

SERIAL

PAGE

PARA AND LINE

RECOMMENDATION

1 ✓ 1 - 17 to 1 - 20

Section 3 paras 1 to 7

Rewrite

2 ✓ 2 - 1 and 2 - 2

201.3

This section should reflect actual policies to mobilization. The conclusions of the Task Force properly belong here rather than suppositions.

3 ✓ 2 - 8

209.6.c

Delete "intelligence"

4 ✓ 2 - 8

209.6.d

Before "coordinate" insert "command and"

5 ✓ 2 - 9

209.7.a

Delete all details. Insert "divisions, and units under command."

6 ✓ 2 - 10

209.7.9

Add new sub-para "g" "national sources"

7 | 2 - 10

210

The divisional organization given in this the same organization as used at staff col that it may consist of a variable number

8 X 2 - 11

211

The comments at serial 7 apply to this para a result of the CD process it may become

9 ✓ 2 - 22

217.7

Delete para insert; Locating Artillery. radars are found in the locating troop of regiments. All other locating resources locating regiment of the corps artillery. battery is normally allotted "under command forward division. Immediate counter mort is normally controlled by division at the Counter battery fire is normally controlled through the divisions.

10 | 2 - 19

217.4.a

Amend

11 ✓ 2 - 22

217.8

This organization must relate to comments

12 X 2 - 45

218

This section could well be reviewed in li Service Support Study.

13 | 2 - A1

a. Show Corps EW Regiment  
 b. Artillery should be shown as Corps Ar than an Artillery Division.

14 | 2 - B1

As for 136 above  <sup>xx</sup> not

15 | 2 - C1

If brigades are not brigade groups, should be more artillery. For clarity VL should be part of the LLAD Regiment or the of each brigade group.

RECOMMENDATION

REASON/COMMENTS

Rewrite

The structure of this section is confused. Ideas and thoughts are mixed, grammar and syntax complex and poor. Does not read smoothly.

This section should reflect actual policies with respect to mobilization. The conclusions of the Mobilization Task Force properly belong here rather than hopeful suppositions.

Delete "intelligence"

Area of interest defined and accepted; intelligence interest is not. The area of intelligence interest is either within the area of interest in which case the term is superfluous, or it extends beyond, in which case army group controls or coordinates collection.

Before "coordinate" insert "command and"

Clarity and completeness

Delete all details. Insert "divisions, other formations and units under command."

To allow for corps reconnaissance or intelligence units. Should the CD process recommend a divisional structure and should this be the basis for future planning then such organization must be adopted for teaching purposes. Should the CD process recommend some other structure then that structure should then form the basis for teaching purposes. The ATDB should adjudicate and provide direction for devising the Canadian division structure.

Add new sub-para "g" "national sources"

The divisional organization given in this manual must be the same organization as used at staff colleges. Note that it may consist of a variable number of brigades.

The comments at serial 7 apply to this paragraph. As a result of the CD process it may become unnecessary.

Delete para insert; Locating Artillery. Counter mortar radars are found in the locating troop of close support regiments. All other locating resources are found in the locating regiment of the corps artillery. A locating battery is normally allotted "under command" of each forward division. Immediate counter mortar response is normally controlled by division at the brigade level. Counter battery fire is normally controlled by corps through the divisions.

In discussions with US, UK and FRG national artillery headquarters, during the CD study, all noted that, with the exception of nuclear missiles, tube and locating resources are being pushed down to divisional level either by habitual grouping or by reorganization. The shift is to allow for more immediate response to mortars by brigades and the concomitant shift of the counter gun requirement.

Amend

The Locating troop, signals troop and adm troop are part of RHQ battery. Note that units are now experimenting with a formal Headquarters Battery organization.

This organization must relate to comments in serial 7.

This section could well be reviewed in light of Combat Service Support Study.

- a. Show Corps EW Regiment.
- b. Artillery should be shown as Corps Artillery rather than an Artillery Division.

Omission

As for 136 above  not

If brigades are not brigade groups, then there should be more artillery. For clarity VLLAD Battery should be part of the LLAD Regiment or should be part of each brigade group.

SERIAL PAGE PARA AND LINE RECOMMENDATION REASON/COMMENTS

|    |        |                 |
|----|--------|-----------------|
| 16 | 2 - D1 |                 |
| 17 | 3 - 8  | 308.2           |
| 18 | 3 - 9  | 308.3           |
| 19 | 3 - 10 | 308.7 and 308.8 |
| 20 | 3 - 10 | 308.7           |

Delete VLLSAM insert VLLAD

Reverse sub-paras "e" and "f"

This section should be rewritten. Definitions do not properly belong here but in Glossary or even CFP 121(4). In any case "under command" may be applied to an element below company and squadron (3a). Air Defence more properly belongs in 3.a. rather than 3.b.

Reverse listing

Delete all detail. Insert

Should not be restricted to SAM

To conform with CFP 300 and usage.

To conform to usage.

*Hubde*  
*D Arty 20, 21, 22 should not be accepted as simple insertions as offered here. Your gen description is better. Per non-Arty readers. However, D Arty has provided a copy of the Arty party time that is authorized.*

|    |        |       |
|----|--------|-------|
| 22 | 3 - 11 | 308.8 |
|    |        | 308.9 |

**At Priority Call.** The overriding allocation of fire support with no inherent requirement for provision of observation, liaison or communications. This is the highest priority of allotment of artillery effort. Field artillery placed in direct support or in support of formations or units may be allotted at priority call to another formation, unit or agency for a specific task or time-frame such as counter-bombardment, fire plan or air OP. In certain circumstances the at priority call allotment may continue for a prolonged period of time when dealing with artillery from formations or units in depth. When this allotment is applied the priority of effort will shift to the formation or unit having the artillery at priority call and immediate response will be provided without reference to higher authority. Artillery at priority call does not normally provide liaison, observation and communications. These functions will be provided by the artillery already allotted in direct support or through the specialist agency to which it has been allotted.

rounds which may be expected on a particular type of target). A field artillery unit or sub-unit can only be placed in Direct Support of one unit or formation at any one time. The priority of fire to the directly supported unit is superseded only by calls for fire from another unit, formation or specialist agency which may have been allotted At Priority Call. When a unit in Direct Support is also allotted At Priority Call or In Support, artillery liaison, communications and observers will remain with the directly supported unit.

quarters. Artillery so allocated will be positioned so that it can provide fire support to the unit/formation to which it is allocated.

**Other Artillery.** It is a fundamental principle of artillery employment that all fire units which are in range, have ammunition available and are not otherwise engaged will respond to all calls for fire which are approved by the higher artillery controlling headquarters. However, this artillery cannot be a factor in planning as it will not

necessarily be sited to provide fire support and, therefore it is not listed in an operation order. For example, under "In Support" only the artillery that will be moved and positioned to provide the required fire support will be listed.

|    |        |         |
|----|--------|---------|
| 23 | 3 - 34 | 317.1.a |
| 24 | 3 - 51 | 327.1.c |
| 25 | 3 - 50 | 326.1.c |
| 26 | 4 - 13 | 405.7   |
| 27 | 4 - 14 | 405.8   |

CDA does not represent the Air Defence

ith 324.3

5 Panel XI WP/10 21 Mar 77

26



SERIAL PAGE PARA AND LINE

|    |   |        |                 |
|----|---|--------|-----------------|
| 16 | ✓ | 2 - D1 |                 |
| 17 | ✓ | 3 - 8  | 308.2           |
| 18 |   | 3 - 9  | 308.3           |
| 19 | ✓ | 3 - 10 | 308.7 and 308.8 |
| 20 |   | 3 - 10 | 308.7           |
| 22 |   | 3 - 11 | 308.8           |
| 23 |   | 3 - 34 | 317.1.a         |
| 24 | ✓ | 3 - 51 | 327.1.c         |
| 25 | ✓ | 3 - 50 | 326.1.c         |
| 26 | ✓ | 4 - 13 | 405.7           |

*Handwritten:*  
 Delete  
 DArty 20, 21, & 22 should NOT  
 be accepted as simple insertions as  
 offered here. Your gen description is better  
 for non-Arty readers. However, DArty has  
 provided a copy of the Arty party tree  
 that is authorized.  
 10

*Handwritten:*  
 In Direct Support.

*Handwritten:*  
 Delete all detail In support

**In Support.** An allocation of fire support with no inherent provision of observation, liaison and communications but with the requirement to be positioned to be able to provide fire support. Artillery not specifically allocated In Direct Support is normally placed In Support of a formation and in this case is not required to provide observation or liaison to the formation it supports. Artillery allocated In Direct Support may also be allocated In Support of other units. The unit to whom they are In Direct Support has priority claim to their fire support. Requests for fire must be approved by the higher controlling headquarters. Artillery so allocated will be deployed so that it can provide fire support to the unit/formation to which it is allocated.

**Other Artillery.** It is a fundamental principle of artillery employment that all fire units which are in range, have ammunition available and are not otherwise engaged will respond to all calls for fire which are approved by the higher artillery controlling headquarters. However, this artillery cannot be a factor in planning as it will not necessarily be sited to provide fire support and.

REASON/COMMENTS

be restricted to SAM  
 with CFP 300 and usage.  
 o usage.  
 e CDA does not represent the Air Defence  
 ith 324.3  
 5 Panel XI WP/10 21 Mar 77

SERIAL PAGE PARA AND LINE

|    |        |                 |
|----|--------|-----------------|
| 16 | 2 - D1 |                 |
| 17 | 3 - 8  | 308.2           |
| 18 | 3 - 9  | 308.3           |
| 19 | 3 - 10 | 308.7 and 308.8 |
| 20 | 3 - 10 | 308.7           |
| 22 | 3 - 11 | 308.8           |
| 23 | 3 - 34 | 317.1.a         |
| 24 | 3 - 51 | 327.1.c         |
| 25 | 3 - 50 | 326.1.c         |
| 26 | 4 - 13 | 405.7           |

*Hubbs*  
*Darty 20, 21, 22 should not be accepted as simple insertions as per non-Arty readers. However, Darty has provided a copy of the Arty part of that is authorized.*

Document divulgué en vertu de la  
 Document divulgué en vertu de la  
 Document divulgué en vertu de la

Document divulgué en vertu de la  
 Document divulgué en vertu de la  
 Document divulgué en vertu de la

REASON/COMMENTS

be restricted to SAM  
 with CFP 300 and usage.  
 o usage.

Delete all detail. Insert "The Commander of the Divisional Artillery (CDA) commands all artillery units (field and AD) in the division and advises the commander on the allocation of fire power. He coordinates all forms of fire support including air. He and his staff become an integral part of the division headquarters where they provide the basis of the Fire Support Coordination Centre (FSCC)".

Insert "FSCC from close support artillery regiment".

Add "(FSCC)".

Add new sub-paras "j. unattended ground sensors; and k. tethered and untethered airborne platforms."

Clarity. The CDA does not represent the Air Defence Commander.

To conform with 324.3

Clarity.

NATO - AC/225 Panel XI WP/10. 21 Mar 77

|      |        |                 |
|------|--------|-----------------|
| 18   | 3 - 9  | 308.3           |
| 19 ✓ | 3 - 10 | 308.7 and 308.8 |
| 20   | 3 - 10 | 308.7           |

Hubbs  
 DArty 20, 21, 22 should NOT be accepted as simple insertions as offered here. Your gen description is better. For non-Arty readers. However, DArty has provided a copy of the Arty party time that is authorized.

|  |    |       |
|--|----|-------|
|  | 10 | 308.8 |
|--|----|-------|

|    |        |       |
|----|--------|-------|
| 22 | 3 - 11 | 308.9 |
|----|--------|-------|

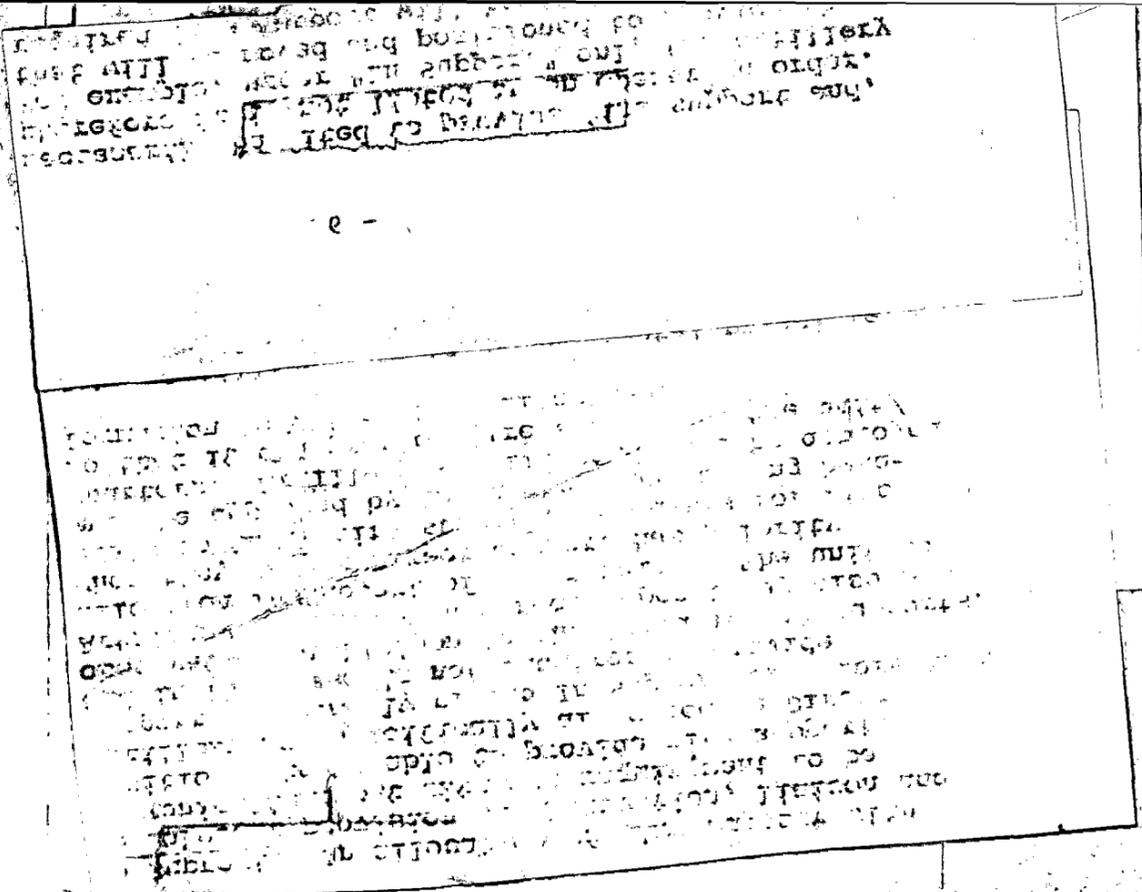
|    |        |         |
|----|--------|---------|
| 23 | 3 - 34 | 317.1.a |
|----|--------|---------|

|      |        |         |
|------|--------|---------|
| 24 ✓ | 3 - 51 | 327.1.c |
|------|--------|---------|

|      |        |         |
|------|--------|---------|
| 25 ✓ | 3 - 50 | 326.1.c |
|------|--------|---------|

|      |        |       |
|------|--------|-------|
| 26 ✓ | 4 - 13 | 405.7 |
|------|--------|-------|

|      |        |       |
|------|--------|-------|
| 27 ✓ | 4 - 14 | 405.8 |
|------|--------|-------|



Delete all detail. Insert "The Commander of the Divisional Artillery (CDA) commands all artillery units (field and AD) in the division and advises the commander on the allocation of fire power. He coordinates all forms of fire support including air. He and his staff become an integral part of the division headquarters where they provide the basis of the Fire Support Coordination Centre (FSCC)".

Clarity. The CDA does not represent the Air Defence Commander.

Insert "FSCC from close support artillery regiment".

To conform with 324.3

Add "(FSCC)".

Clarity.

Add new sub-paras "j. unattended ground sensors; and k. tethered and untethered airborne platforms."

NATO - AC/225 Panel XI WP/10. 21 Mar 77

Add new sub-paras "l. elevated/airborne platforms; m. drones; n. RPVs; p. UGSs; q. reconnaissance helicopters; r. light reconnaissance aircraft; s. weapon locating radar; and t. acoustic weapon locating/IR flash spotting."

See serial 26

| S  | L | PAGE             | PARA AND LINE       | RECOMMENDATION   | REASON/COMMENTS   |
|----|---|------------------|---------------------|--|---|
| 28 | ✓ | 4 - 15           | 405.9               | Delete sub-para "e" and "f"  | Comint and Elint are components of Sigint.  |
| 29 | ✓ | 4 - 15           | 405.9               | Delete sub-para "o"  | Normally found at division.   |
| 30 | ✓ | 4 - 15           | 405.9               | Add "drones, RPVs, UGSs, light reconnaissance aircraft, stand-off airborne platforms."   | Serial 26   |
| 31 |   |                  | Chapter 4 Section 2 | <u>Intelligence.</u> Treatment of intelligence function still remains piece-meal particularly in view of the capabilities now available through technology. Recommend that the CD process be tasked to address the problem of all source intelligence.   |   |
| 32 | ✓ | 4 - 18           | 407                 | The information needs and coverage listed do not match those agreed by NATO for "area of influence" and "area of interest". The area of intelligence interest is not agreed and the former coverage should be used (see serial 3)  | QWG/STANO Concept Paper on the contribution of BARSTA to combat intelligence. Plus:<br>AC/225 (Panel XI) WP/10 21 Mar 77<br>AC/225 (Panel VI) WP/17 9 Sep 76<br>AC/225 (Panel VI) WP/19 20 Jan 77 |
| 33 | ✓ | 4 - 54           | 419.1 line 6        | Delete "seismic detectors" insert "remote sensors"   | General categorization more compatible.   |
| 34 | ✓ | 4 - 61           | 420.2               | Add "unattended ground sensors; elevated/airborne platforms; electronic support measures"  | Completeness.   |
| 35 | ✓ | 4 - 66a          | 420.8               | Deception and overt measure such as electro-optical countermeasures, obscurants, ECM, ECCM, and acoustic saturation have been ignored. They should be included.  | Completeness. QWG/STANO Concept Paper on Countersurveillance expands on topic.  |
|    |   |                  |                     | <i>See below.</i>  |   |
| 37 |   | 4 - 69 to 4 - 76 | 422 Air Défence     | Rewrite as follows:<br><br>"1. <u>General.</u> The aim of air defence in the forward area is to prevent the enemy from interfering from the air with our ground operations. The enemy air effort must be reduced or nullified by inflicting as high a proportion of losses as possible before the aircraft have released their weapons or carried out their reconnaissance mission. Overall, the air defence effort must inflict a sufficiently high rate of attrition to deter any second pass or future sorties. Air defence weapons must destroy or nullify highly sophisticated and highly effective helicopter weapon systems. These may present the primary threat to troops in contact. Additionally, the air defence system must counter the effects of airborne surveillance and electronic countermeasure devices and heliborne assaults.<br><br>"2. <u>Air Defence Weapons.</u> Air defence weapons are classified according to major roles played in providing air defence coverage throughout the required altitude/range spectrum.<br><br>a. At the upper level, conceptually as air forces responsibility, air defence is provided by dedicated interceptor/fighter aircraft; | Air defence procedures and terminologies are changing. This manual should reflect latest procedures.  |

31

Chapter 4 Section 2

Intelligence. Treatment of intelligence function still remains piece-meal particularly in view of the capabilities now available through technology. Recommend that the CD process be tasked to address the problem of all source intelligence.

32

4 - 18

407

The information needs and coverage listed do not match those agreed by NATO for "area of influence" and "area of interest". The area of intelligence interest is not agreed and the former coverage should be used (see serial 3)

QWG/STANO Concept Paper on the contribution of BARSTA to combat intelligence. Plus:  
AC/225 (Panel XI) WP/10 21 Mar 77  
AC/225 (Panel VI) WP/17 9 Sep 76  
AC/225 (Panel VI) WP/19 20 Jan 77

33

4 - 54

419.1 line 6

Delete "seismic detectors" insert "remote sensors"

General categorization more compatible.

34

4 - 61

420.2

Add "unattended ground sensors; elevated/airborne platforms; electronic support measures"

Completeness.

35

4 - 66a

420.8

Deception and overt measure such as electro-optical countermeasures, obscurants, ECM, ECCM, and acoustic saturation have been ignored. They should be included.

Completeness. QWG/STANO Concept Paper or Countersurveillance expands on topic.

*See below.*

37

4 - 69 to 4 - 76

422 Air Défense

Rewrite as follows:

Air defence procedures and terminologies are changing. This manual should reflect latest procedures.

"1. General. The aim of air defence in the forward area is to prevent the enemy from interfering from the air with our ground operations. The enemy air effort must be reduced or nullified by inflicting as high a proportion of losses as possible before the aircraft have released their weapons or carried out their reconnaissance mission. Overall, the air defence effort must inflict a sufficiently high rate of attrition to deter any second pass or future sorties. Air defence weapons must destroy or nullify highly sophisticated and highly effective helicopter weapon systems. These may present the primary threat to troops in contact. Additionally, the air defence system must counter the effects of airborne surveillance and electronic countermeasure devices and heliborne assaults.

"2. Air Defence Weapons. Air defence weapons are classified according to major roles played in providing air defence coverage throughout the required altitude/range spectrum.

- a. At the upper level, conceptually as air forces responsibility, air defence is provided by dedicated interceptor/fighter aircraft;
- b. National base, theatre infrastructure assets and rear areas are defended by medium and long range surface to air missile systems. These systems are manned by either airforce or army personnel.

| SERIAL | PAGE   | PARA AND LINE                      | RECOMMENDATION  | REASON/COMMENTS         |
|--------|--------|------------------------------------|---|-------------------------|
|        |        |                                    | <p>c. Short range air defence (SHORAD) is performed by three classes of equipment.</p> <p>(1) light systems - usually missiles with a 6-8km intercept range or guns with a 2-4km range.</p> <p>(2) manpads- man portable air defence systems invariably shoulder launched missiles but not precluding dedicated specialist projector weapons.</p> <p>(3) AAAD-- all-arms air defence, normally ground support weapons used in a secondary air defence role.</p> <p>Any and all these weapon systems may be deployed for self-defence, area of defence or point defence or point defence depending on equipment characteristics and operational requirements.</p> <p>3. <u>Defensive Measures.</u> Defensive measures against enemy aircraft can be divided into two categories:</p> <p>a. <u>Passive Measures.</u> These include camouflage concealment, deception, protection, electronic countermeasures, dispersion and carefully controlled movement. Advantage must be taken by darkness and poor daylight/ adverse weather for movement, preparation and occupation of positions. Obviously, passive measures are in themselves not enough, therefore we have other measures.</p> <p>b. <u>Active Measures.</u> Controlled fire from all available air defence weapons and other weapons employed in an air defence role brought to bear to destroy enemy aircraft and to deter the enemy air effort.</p> |                         |
| 38     | 4 - 71 | 422.4.a line six                   | Insert "important" after "certain"  | Clarity                 |
| 39     | 4 - 72 | 422.4.b line four                  | Add ", within any realtime engagement parameters"   | Accuracy and clarity    |
| 40     | 4 - 73 | 422.4.d line four                  | Insert "positive" before "visual" and insert "for" after "and"  | Accuracy and clarity    |
| 41     | 4 - 74 | 422.4.g line five                  | Delete sentence beginning "Personnel manning...weapon system" insert "Personnel manning these systems must rely on another set of hostile criteria with visual identification being one. The ultimate decision to engage rests with the individual in charge of the weapon system"  | Accuracy and clarity    |
| 42     | 4 - 74 | 422.5.a line one<br><br>line eight | Delete " <u>Minute-to-minute Control</u> " insert " <u>Positive Control (minute to minute)</u> "<br><br>Delete "is" insert "requires reliable communications and is"  | Accuracy<br><br>Clarity |
| 43     | 4 - 75 | 422.5.b line one                   | Delete " <u>Prearranged Control</u> " insert " <u>Procedure Control (Prearranged)</u> "   | Accuracy                |
| 44     | 4 - 75 | 422.5.c (1) line one               | After "not" insert "positively"   | Clarity                 |

- (2) manpads- man portable air defence systems invariably shoulder launched missiles but not precluding dedicated specialist projector weapons.
- (3) AAAD-- all-arms air defence, normally ground support weapons used in a secondary air defence role.

Any and all these weapon systems may be deployed for self-defence, area of defence or point defence or point defence depending on equipment characteristics and operational requirements.

3. Defensive Measures. Defensive measures against enemy aircraft can be divided into two categories:

- a. Passive Measures. These include camouflage concealment, deception, protection, electronic countermeasures, dispersion and carefully controlled movement. Advantage must be taken by darkness and poor daylight/ adverse weather for movement, preparation and occupation of positions. Obviously, passive measures are in themselves not enough, therefore we have other measures.
- b. Active Measures. Controlled fire from all available air defence weapons and other weapons employed in an air defence role brought to bear to destroy enemy aircraft and to deter the enemy air effort.

|    |   |         |   |  |                                  |
|----|---|---------|---|--|----------------------------------|
| 38 | ✓ | 4 - 71  | 422.4.a line six                          | Insert "important" after "certain"   | Clarity                          |
| 39 | 0 | 4 - 72  | 422.4.b line four                         | Add ", within any realtime engagement parameters"  | Accuracy and clarity             |
| 40 | ✓ | 4 - 73  | 422.4.d line four                         | Insert "positive" before "visual" and insert "for" after "and"   | Accuracy and clarity             |
| 41 | ✓ | 4 - 74  | 422.4.g line five                         | Delete sentence beginning "Personnel manning...weapon system" insert "Personnel manning these systems must rely on another set of hostile criteria with visual identification being one. The ultimate decision to engage rests with the individual in charge of the weapon system" | Accuracy and clarity             |
| 42 | ✓ | 4 - 74  | 422.5.a line one<br><br>line eight        | Delete " <u>Minute-to-minute Control</u> " insert " <u>Positive Control (minute to minute)</u> "<br><br>Delete "is" insert "requires reliable communications and is"   | Accuracy<br><br>Clarity          |
| 43 | ✓ | 4 - 75  | 422.5.b line one                          | Delete " <u>Prearranged Control</u> " insert " <u>Procedure Control (Prearranged)</u> "  | Accuracy                         |
| 44 | ✓ | 4 - 75  | 422.5.c (1) line one                      | After "not" insert "positively"  | Clarity                          |
| 45 | ✓ | 4 - 75  | 422.5.c (3) line one                      | Delete all detail. Insert " <u>WEAPONS HOLD. Do not fire; however, the right...</u> "  | Accuracy                         |
| 46 | ✓ | 4 - 75a | 422.6.a line one<br>line four<br>line six | After "not" insert "normally"<br>Delete "and control"<br>Delete "except that...is not used"  | Accuracy<br>Accuracy<br>Accuracy |

| SERIAL | PAGE            | PARA AND LINE                      | RECOMMENDATION  | REASON/COMMENTS   |
|--------|-----------------|------------------------------------|---|---|
| 47     | 4 - 76          | 422.6.c line two<br><br>line three | Delete "medium and". After "systems," insert "with medium"<br><br>Delete "maybe" after "in" insert "the division and"   | If we base our publications on NATO doctrine every above SHORAD is an air forces problem.   |
| 48     | 3 - 9           | para 3.a.                          | Delete last sentence.   | Although Squadron/Company may be the lowest level at which "under command" is used in theory, in practice it has been common to place 1/2 Sqn's or Platoons under command. It may have been the author's aim to make a point, but this is not where it should be made.                                |
| 49     | 3 - 25          | para 3.a.                          | Add additional responsibility to Ops Cell; allocation of ground within the formation including high ground control.   | Important responsibility especially when choice of locations are scarce and competition for them is high.   |
| 50     | 3 - 29          | para 1.e.(1)                       |   | It would seem logical that the layout of the Div Adm Area should be coordinated by the Comd DISGP. Throughout the document, there is confusion between responsibilities of the DCS Adm and Comd DISGP and SO2 Adm and CO Svc Bn at Div and Bde levels respectively                                    |
| 51     | 3 - 45 - 3 - 52 | Articles 322 - 327                 | Signal Terminology used in these sections should be changed to agree with that contained in CFCSC Publication CS2 203 (The Corps), Fourth Edition, Chapter Two. The accepted terms are:<br><br>a. <u>Trunk Node</u> - The signals complex located away from the HQ. (Formerly Communication Centre). Normally controlled at Div level although a NODE may be detached to a Bde with an independent mission or to a Bde Cp.<br><br>b. <u>Access Node</u> . (Formerly Signal Centre) - Signals complex at Bde HQ and Higher HQ.<br><br>c. <u>Signal Centre</u> - At unit HQ | Current content does not agree with accepted Signal Doctrine.   |
| 52     | 3 - E1          | Annex E to Chap 3                  | EW Ln Tm must be inside barbed wire..   | EW Ops in an extension of the Ops/Int functions and must be integrated with them. If the EW Ln team is separated physically as shown in the diagram, the usefulness of the EW advice will be lost.  |
| 53     | 3 - B1          | Annex B                            |   | The Cbt Svc Sp Advisers portion of the diagram is confusing. It appears that the only difference between a Bde and a Bde Cp HQ, is that there is no Svc Bn CO in a Bde. In fact, in a Bde under a Div, all adm/log assists should belong to Div and be attached to a Bde as part of the Div Log Plan. |
| 54     | 4 - 79A         |                                    | Under Support Measures - delete "Telegraphic Intelligence"  | This is not a common nor accepted term. Int derived from telegraphic comms would be included under communications intelligence.   |
| 55     | 4 - 79          | para 425.2                         | At line 4 delete "aircraft" and insert "airborne platforms". Overall this para is poorly written.   | Aircraft is too limiting in that the connotation is often assumed to mean aeroplane (airplane).   |
| 56     | 4 - 80          | para 425.2c                        | Analysis. Delete "especially if enemy security measures are effective."   |   |
| 57     | 4 - 80          | para 425.2d                        | Delete "with sufficient accuracy..."  | If you wish to draw attention to accuracy vis-a-vis fire imply that current systems are not accurate enough to target arty to a point. Possibly could state "accuracy may or may not be adequate to bring   |

| 48 | ✓ 3 - 9         | line three<br>para 3.a. | Delete "maybe" after "in" insert "the division" and<br>Delete last sentence   | Document disclosed under the Access to Information Act<br>Document divulgué en vertu de la Loi sur l'accès à l'information<br>Although Squadron/Company may be the lowest level at which "under command" is used in theory, in practice it has been common to place 1/2 Sqn's or Platoons under command. It may have been the author's aim to make a point, but this is not where it should be made. |
|----|-----------------|-------------------------|---|--|
| 49 | ✓/No 3 - 25     | para 3.a.               | Add additional responsibility to Ops Cell; allocation of ground within the formation including high ground control.   | Important responsibility especially when choice of locations are scarce and competition for them is high.  |
| 50 | 3 - 29          | para 1.e.(1)            |   | It would seem logical that the layout of the Div Adm Area should be coordinated by the Comd DISGP. Throughout the document, there is confusion between responsibilities of the DCS Adm and Comd DISGP and SO2 Adm and CO Svc Bn at Div and Bde levels respectively   |
| 51 | 3 - 45 - 3 - 52 | Articles 322 - 327      | Signal Terminology used in these sections should be changed to agree with that contained in CFCSC Publication CS2.203 (The Corps), Fourth Edition, Chapter Two. The accepted terms are:   | Current content does not agree with accepted Signal Doctrine.  |
|    |                 |                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. <u>Trunk Node</u> - The signals complex located away from the HQ. (Formerly Communication Centre). Normally controlled at Div level although a NODE may be detached to a Bde with an independent mission or to a Bde Cp.</li> <li>b. <u>Access Node</u>. (Formerly Signal Centre) - Signals complex at Bde HQ and Higher HQ.</li> <li>c. <u>Signal Centre</u> - At unit HQ</li> </ul> |  |
| 52 | 3 - E1          | Annex E to Chap 3       | EW Ln Tm must be inside barbed wire.  | EW Ops in an extension of the Ops/Int functions and must be integrated with them. If the EW Ln team is separated physically as shown in the diagram, the usefulness of the EW advice will be lost.   |
| 53 | 3 - B1          | Annex B                 |   | The Cbt Svc Sp Advisers portion of the diagram is confusing. It appears that the only difference between a Bde and a Bde Cp HQ, is that there is no Svc Bn CO in a Bde. In fact, in a Bde under a Div, all adm/log assists should belong to Div and be attached to a Bde as part of the Div Log Plan.  |
| 54 | 4 - 79A         |                         | Under Support Measures - delete "Telegraphic Intelligence"  | This is not a common nor accepted term. Int derived from telegraphic comms would be included under communications intelligence.  |
| 55 | 4 - 79          | para 425.2              | At line 4 delete "aircraft" and insert "airborne platforms". Overall this para is poorly written.   | Aircraft is too limiting in that the connotation is often assumed to mean aeroplane (airplane).  |
| 56 | 4 - 80          | para 425.2c             | Analysis. Delete "especially if enemy security measures are effective."   |  |
| 57 | 4 - 80          | para 425.2d             | Delete "with sufficient accuracy..."  | If you wish to draw attention to accuracy vis-a-vis fire imply that current systems are not accurate enough to target arty to a point. Possibly could state "accuracy may or may not be adequate to bring fire on the fixed target."   |

TRIAL

PAGE

PARA AND LINE

RECOMMENDATION

REASON/COMMENTS

58

4 - 92

para 12

Tactical Rules:

- a. EW ECM units must be able to operate while moving.
- b. EW detachments should be displayed with or screening

59

Section 5

Contains numerous errors in doctrine and tactics and should be completely re-written by BEW/FMC HQ.

The area of EW is new and evolving a State of the art must be considered. Understandably there is much controversy in this untried field.

**CHIEF LAND DOCTRINE  
AND OPERATIONS**  
DEC 5 1979

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301(1) (DIT)

5

05 Dec 79

DLP 4

COMMENTS - FIRST DRAFT CFP 301(1)

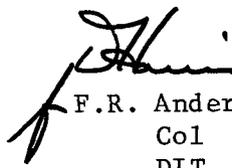
Ref: 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP 4) dated 5 Oct 79

1. The first draft of CFP 301(1) - Formations in Battle - has been reviewed.

2. The following specific comments are provided:

- ① a. pg 2-3 - para 203.1, last sentence does not include all capabilities of munitions; perhaps it should be more general like, .... "to engage the enemy with nuclear and all types of conventional munitions." ✓
- ② b. pg 2-10 7e, "drones" is too restrictive and actually superfluous in context with sources listed above. Following 7e a new source "flanking formations" should be added. ✓
- ③ c. pg 2-12 - suggest delete "-major general", it may not be so. ✓
- ④ d. 210 Division para 1.c. We have more than Inf and Armd units in these brigades. Suggest "three brigades" is all that is required under 1.c. ✓
- e. pg 2-14 and 2-15. Two paras 216 are used.
  - under 216 Combat Arms on pg 2-15, suggest rewording to reflect Arty, Engrs and Sigs perceived as "Cbt Arms" and not support units. ✗

3. The author is to be congratulated on producing a first class draft. It is suggested that an equivalent to the previous CAMT 1-9, War Establishments and Staff Data be produced. This document would supplement the draft and perhaps reduce the volume of the subject manual.

  
F.R. Anderson  
Col  
DIT  
6-6349

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301(1) (DLA)

21

5 Dec 79

DLP 4

CFP 301(1)-FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FIRST DRAFT

Ref: 2910-CFP 301(1) DLP 4, 5 Oct 79

1. Attached at Annex A are detailed comments on the first draft of CFP 301(1).
2. I consider that the publication of CFP 301(1) should be delayed until after the Land Forces Combat System Study is completed. There are many inconsistencies between CFP 301(1)/CFP 303(1) and the documents upon which the Study Team is basing its deliberations, e.g., the Air Support Study. While the Air Support Study has not as yet been approved for doctrinal purposes, it has been recommended that the tactical aviation organizations included in the Study be accepted for study purposes, at staff colleges for instance, regardless of whether the Combat System Study eventually includes these organizations in its system model. You may recall that the rationale for this recommendation by the Air Support Study Team (ASST) was in large part based on the compatibility of the ASST org with that of our allies in Central Europe, specifically Fr, Ge, UK and US. As a case in point Fr, Ge and UK each employ approximately 70 Attack Helicopters (AH) at or within Corps whereas in our CFP 303(1) we cite 24 x AH within Corps. The US employ considerably more AH within 5 and 7 Corps in Central Europe because of the emphasis on air mobility and aerial fire power in US tactical doctrine for European operations. Despite the fact that the US task organize depending on theatre, mission and operation, their tactical manuals depict the doctrinal standard division as having an AH Coy with 21 AHs and 12 LOH with an additional reserve held at Corps. The point intended here is simply that we should strive for some compatibility with our principal allies at least doctrinally in terms of organization. The Air Support Study does this and in the fullness of time, I believe the study recommendation will prevail.

.../2

3. Assuming that the Air Study recommendation is accepted, the organizations described in CFP 301(1) and CFP 303(1) will be obsolete, and those publications will require extensive amending. More serious will be the problem created by the fact that we will have been teaching wrong organizations and doctrine, if CFP 301(1) and CFP 303(1) are used in the interim period. The wrong teaching will then have to be unlearned, and correct organizations and doctrine learned in place - a difficult process. In summary, the organizations and doctrine in CFP 301(1) and CFP 303(1) - at least those related to tactical aviation - bear little relationship to the organizations and doctrine of our NATO allies, a fact which reduces Canada's credibility within NATO.

  
P.E. Argue  
LCol  
DLA  
2-7471

Attachment:

Annex A Recommended Amendments to CFP 301(1)

RECOMMENDED AMENDMENTS

CFP 301(1) - FORMATIONS IN BATTLE - FIRST DRAFT

| Serial<br>(a) | Draft Reference<br>(b)  | Recommended Amendment<br>(c)   | Reason for Recommendation<br>(d)  |
|---------------|---|--|---|
| 1.            | Covering letter<br>2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP, 4),<br>5 Oct 79, para 5. | CFP- 301(1) should not be published until<br>the Land Force Combat System Study is<br>completed. | At present, there are many inconsistencies<br>among CFP 301(1) (draft), CFP 303(1) (interim),<br>NATO force proposals, and the Air Support<br>Study. The Land Force Combat System Study<br>should resolve these inconsistencies. If<br>CFP 301(1) is published prior to completion<br>of the Study, incorrect orgs and doctrine<br>will be taught and employed. X |
| 2.            | Para 211.1 g, p.2-11  | Add "or wing".   | If the task force is "a semi-permanent<br>organization of units, under...a major<br>general", it is possible that the tac hel wing<br>described in the previous section will be<br>allotted, particularly if the task force<br>is not operating under a corps HQ. ✓   |
| 3.            | Para 212.2, p.2-12  | Add "group" after "brigade".   | Annex D to Chapter 2 is titled "A Mechanized<br>Brigade Group". ✓   |
| 4.            | Pp. 2-14, 2-15  | Change para numbering  | There are two paras 216. ✓  |
| 5.            | Para 217.26 a, p.2-41   | Add "attack helicopters and medium<br>transport helicopters" to first<br>sentence. ✓             | If the Land Force Combat System Study concludes<br>that a division should be the basic combat<br>system, it is possible that AHs and MTHs will<br>be found in the tac hel wing. ✓   |

- |     |                                |   |  |   |
|-----|--------------------------------|---|--|---|
| 6.  | Para 217.26 b, p.2-42          | Add "an attack helicopter squadron", "a medium transport helicopter squadron", "an ambulance squadron", "a general purpose tactical helicopter squadron", "an administrative squadron", and "a signals troop".<br>Delete sub-para 217.26 b.b ("a light observation helicopter squadron"). | As for Serial 5.<br>See Table 22-5 to the Air Support Study.   | X |
| 7.  | Para 217.26 b, p.2-42          | Change sub-para letters to numbers in parentheses.  | Sub-para lettering is incorrect.   | ✓ |
| 8.  | Para 217.26 c, line 9, p. 2-42 | Insert "control" between "traffic" and "flight".  | Unit title at present is incorrect.  | ✓ |
| 9.  | Para 217.26 d, pp. 2-42, 2-43. | Delete  | Name of unit and description of org are incorrect.   |   |
| 10. | Para 217.26                    | Add sub-paras describing sub-units in serial 6.   | As for serial 6.   |   |
| 11. | Annex A to Chapter 2           | The aviation symbol should show a unit equivalent to a brigade group.   | The corps aviation unit is a tactical helicopter "group", and will probably be commanded by a brigadier-general (although it is considered that CFP 301(1) should not include specific rank structures). |   |
|     |                                | The aviation symbol should be solid, rather than open.  | The aviation unit is organic to the land forces.   |   |
| 12. | Annex B to Chapter 2           | The aviation symbol should show a unit equivalent to a regiment or group.<br>The aviation symbol should be solid rather than open.  | The division tactical helicopter wing will be commanded by a colonel.<br><br>As for serial 11.   |   |
| 13. | Annex C to Chapter 2           | The aviation symbol should show a unit equivalent to a regiment or group.<br>The aviation symbol should be solid, rather than open.   | See serial 2.<br><br>As for serial 11.   |   |
| 14. | Annex D to Chapter 2           | The aviation symbol should show a unit equivalent to a battalion.<br>The aviation symbol should be solid, rather than open.   | A tac hel sqn is commanded by a lcol.<br><br>As for serial 11.   |   |

ANNEX A  
TO 2910-CFP301(1) (DLA)  
DATED 5 DEC 79

- |                                  |  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|---|
| 15. Annex A to Chapter 3         | Delete "LCol" under "CD Avn" and insert "Col".   | The Comd Div Tac Hel Wing/CD Avn will be a col. It is considered that CFP 301(1) should not include specific ranks in its org charts, but if ranks are incl the correct one is col. | ✓ |
| 16. Para 448.2e, p. 4-148        | Delete "aerial artillery" and insert "aerial direction and control of fire".   | The term "aerial artillery" implies an airborne gun.  | ✓ |
| 17. Para 448.2d, p. 4-148        | Add "and other fire support".  | An attack/armed hel can be employed against tgts other than armoured ones.  | ✗ |
| 18. Para 448.2, p. 4-148         | Add new sub-para "Counter-mobility operations".  | Counter-mobility ops were defined by the Combat Development Committee as one of the tasks of tac avn. See the Air Support Study, Chapter 17.  | ✓ |
| 19. Para 448.7, p. 4-156, line 3 | Delete "of 15 degrees" and insert "of a maximum of 10 degrees".  | The Aircraft Operating Instructions for the CH-135 and CH-136 limit those aircraft to slopes of 10 degrees.   | ✓ |
| 20. Para 616.5e, p. 6-59         | Delete "a flexible and responsive anti-tank striking force" and insert "flexible and responsive anti-armour and other fire support". | See serial 17.  | ✓ |
| 21. Para 340, p. 6-130           | Delete "340" and insert "640"  | Para numbering is incorrect.  | ✓ |

PIA

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP301-1

2910-CFP 301(1) (DIT)

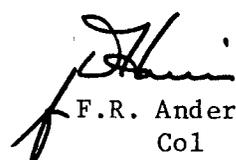
05 Dec 79

DLP 4

COMMENTS - FIRST DRAFT CFP 301(1)

Ref: 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP 4) dated 5 Oct 79

1. The first draft of CFP 301(1) - Formations in Battle - has been reviewed.
2. The following specific comments are provided:
  - a. pg 2-3 - para 203.1, last sentence does not include all capabilities of munitions; perhaps it should be more general like, .... "to engage the enemy with nuclear and all types of conventional munitions."
  - b. pg 2-10 7e, "drones" is too restrictive and actually superfluous in context with sources listed above. Following 7e a new source "flanking formations" should be added.
  - c. pg 2-12 - suggest delete "-major general", it may not be so.
  - d. 210 Division para 1.c. We have more than Inf and Armd units in these brigades. Suggest "three brigades" is all that is required under 1.c.
  - e. pg 2-14 and 2-15. Two paras 216 are used.
    - under 216 Combat Arms on pg 2-15, suggest rewording to reflect Arty, Engrs and Sigs perceived as "Cbt Arms" and not support units.
3. The author is to be congratulated on producing a first class draft. It is suggested that an equivalent to the previous CAMT 1-9, War Establishments and Staff Data be produced. This document would supplement the draft and perhaps reduce the volume of the subject manual.

  
F.R. Anderson  
Col  
DIT  
6-6349



4

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP301-1

~~2910-CFP 301(1)~~ (DLA)

5 Dec 79

DLP 4

CFP 301(1)-FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FIRST DRAFT

Ref: 2910-CFP 301(1) DLP 4, 5 Oct 79

1. Attached at Annex A are detailed comments on the first draft of CFP 301(1).
2. I consider that the publication of CFP 301(1) should be delayed until after the Land Forces Combat System Study is completed. There are many inconsistencies between CFP 301(1)/CFP 303(1) and the documents upon which the Study Team is basing its deliberations, e.g., the Air Support Study. While the Air Support Study has not as yet been approved for doctrinal purposes, it has been recommended that the tactical aviation organizations included in the Study be accepted for study purposes, at staff colleges for instance, regardless of whether the Combat System Study eventually includes these organizations in its system model. You may recall that the rationale for this recommendation by the Air Support Study Team (ASST) was in large part based on the compatibility of the ASST org with that of our allies in Central Europe, specifically Fr, Ge, UK and US. As a case in point Fr, Ge and UK each employ approximately 70 Attack Helicopters (AH) at or within Corps whereas in our CFP 303(1) we cite 24 AH within Corps. The US employ considerably more AH within 5 and 7 Corps in Central Europe because of the emphasis on air mobility and aerial fire power in US tactical doctrine for European operations. Despite the fact that the US task organize depending on theatre, mission and operation, their tactical manuals depict the doctrinal standard division as having an AH Coy with 21 AHs and 12 LOH with an additional reserve held at Corps. The point intended here is simply that we should strive for some compatibility with our principal allies at least doctrinally in terms of organization. The Air Support Study does this and in the fullness of time, I believe the study recommendation will prevail.

.../2

3. Assuming that the Air Study recommendation is accepted, the organizations described in CFP 301(1) and CFP 303(1) will be obsolete, and those publications will require extensive amending. More serious will be the problem created by the fact that we will have been teaching wrong organizations and doctrine, if CFP 301(1) and CFP 303(1) are used in the interim period. The wrong teaching will then have to be unlearned, and correct organizations and doctrine learned in place - a difficult process. In summary, the organizations and doctrine in CFP 301(1) and CFP 303(1) - at least those related to tactical aviation - bear little relationship to the organizations and doctrine of our NATO allies, a fact which reduces Canada's credibility within NATO.

ORIGINAL SIGNED BY  
P. E. ARGUE  
LCOL

P. E. Argue  
LCol  
DLA  
2-7471

Attachment:

Annex A Recommended Amendments to CFP 301(1)

D.E STOVEL/MAJ/DLA2/2-6040/cf

[Faint, illegible text]

4





National Défense  
Defence nationale

2910-2 (SSO Land)

97

Canadian Forces Command  
and Staff College  
215 Yonge Blvd  
Toronto, Ontario  
M5M 3H9  
30 November 1979

2) DLP 4-2  
For prep of  
analysis and  
all comments  
have been  
received -  
pd  
MDEP  
5 Dec 79

NDRMS/SGDDN 3-3-2  
Referred to  
Transmis à... DLP

Distribution List

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)  
FORMATIONS IN BATTLE - FIRST DRAFT

Reference: 2910 - CFP 301(1)(DLP 4) 5 Oct 79

DEC 4 1979

File No  
Dossier No. 2910-CFP301-1  
Charged to/Chargé à... DGLS OPD3

GENERAL

1. The first draft is a good attempt at incorporating material from primary and secondary sources. It contains many good sections, several of which are in themselves near-publications. The detailed comments to this letter provide examples of the latter.

2. It is realized that the prime purpose of this manual is to "capture" Canadian doctrine and it is a credible effort. The difficulty in rationalizing and synthesizing material from various sources coupled with the lack of definitive Canadian concepts for high intensity operations at formation levels has resulted in a publication which in some parts is far too general, while in others it is far too detailed.

3. The attempt to describe how to organize and conduct operations at brigade group and division levels in one manual has resulted in a publication which is too general in nature and which does not contain the specific doctrinal material appropriate for each level. This is evident in Chapters 4 through 8 and is the subject of detailed comments at Annex A.

SPECIFIC COMMENTS

4. In addition to the Annex A which contains comments on terminology, as well as substantial comments on doctrine, the paragraphs below contain constructive points for the next draft.

5. Chapter One - Reduce amount of material (see detailed comments) add a summary and reorganize the chapter as follows:

- a. Aim
- b. Scope
- c. Threat
- d. Principles (Include Combat Power)

2

0. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100.

101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150.

e. Operational Area.

f. Summary

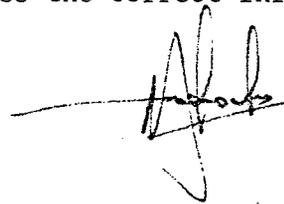
6. Chapter Two - The Task Force referred to in the mobilization concept described must be clearly understood to be an interim organization (see detailed comment for further explanation). In addition, section 2 could be reduced by deleting the explanation of organizations. The latter could be shown in an organization chart attached as an annex. Much of the information on organizations is very general and is included in such manuals as CFP 300 - Conduct of Land Operations. If such a reduction was made, the author could then combine Chapter One and Two.

7. Chapter Four - This chapter should be reduced by eliminating much of the detail in section 2 which is more correctly developed in the detail intended in CFP 322 (Communications). Section 3, Tactical Deception, is a welcome addition although the section could be reduced. Section 5 could be reduced to one paragraph as the "how to" of EW is found in other manuals. Section 8 could be eliminated as it says nothing that is not found in ATP 27 and 40. Sections 11 and 12 could be removed in their entirety to form a separate publication. This chapter contains conflicting logistics philosophy throughout. A lot of the information is a direct copy of CSC 205 and CFP 303(9). Consider combining efforts to publish a separate publication on Administration and include the best of CSC 205 and Section 11, Chapter 4, CFP 301(1).

8. Chapter Five - This chapter should concentrate on the "how" formations conduct offensive operation. It does this very well at the start, but then gets into too much detail which should be kept for other manuals. Examples are articles 514, 515 and 516 where battle group tactics (and below) are described.

9. Chapter Six - Another lengthy chapter which could be reduced by removing descriptions of NATO agreed terms such as key terrain, vital ground and important ground (article 612) to an annex or by referring to NATO Glossary. Article 614 paragraph 8, sub-paragraphs a through e could be eliminated for the same reasons. In addition, this chapter does not clearly distinguish between the two forms of defence. As written it describes the classic positional defence.

10. Chapter Eight - Present contents of this chapter is written for the Mechanized Infantry in Battle publication. It is suggested that Chapter 10 of CSC 204 The Division, Edition 4, provides the correct information at the appropriate level for this manual.



A. Sosnkowski  
Colonel

for Commandant Canadian Forces College

 Attachment

Annex A

.../3

DISTRIBUTION LIST

Attention: Director Land Plans ✓

National Defence Headquarters  
101 Colonel By Drive  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0K2

Commandant  
Canadian Land Forces  
Command and Staff College  
Fort Frontenac  
Kingston, Ontario  
K7K 2X8

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

ANNEX A  
 TO 2910-2 (SSO LAND)  
 DATED 30 NOV 79

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |       |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | EXPLANATION  |
|--------|----------------|-----|-------|----------|--|--|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA  | SUB-PARA |  |  |
| 1      | 1              | 102 | 3     | a        | Include Corps.   | Corps level is discussed in Chapter 2. Corps level is also required teaching at the CFCSC. ✓   |
| 2      | 1              | 101 |       |          | Delete "The Tactical Fundamentals and Techniques necessary to conduct operations of war" and insert "The Tactical Doctrine, on the conduct of operations of war...".   | The term tactical fundamentals and techniques is not considered precise enough to clearly establish the aim of the manual. ✓   |
| 3      | 1              | 102 | 2     |          | Delete the phrase "Pre-Nuclear or Nuclear Battle" and insert "Conventional or Nuclear Warfare".<br><i>5 CDC agreement - minutes</i>  | The terms of Pre-Nuclear and Nuclear are not agreed terms and the use of a term such as pre-nuclear has a connotation which could lead to the meaning of the agreed NATO doctrine on nuclear operations contained in ATP 35 being misconstrued. The term of Conventional Warfare is a widely excepted term, and the term nuclear warfare is contained in CFP 121(4). X |
| 4      | 1              | 102 | 4 & 5 |          | Exclude from Chapter 1.  | This information should be in a preface. X   |
| 5      | 1              | 103 |       |          | Major revision.  | Not clearly defined. Leaves reader to imagine there is more to come after air support... X   |
| 6      | 1              | 104 |       |          | Exclude from Chapter 1.  | Recommend in the preface. X  |
| 7      | 1              | 105 |       |          | The paragraph should explain the current Canadian Forces defence policy on the defence of Europe.<br><br>Leading from the above, the article should explain that it is in Europe that the Canadian Forces are most likely to be involved in operations involving large formations. | This will clearly spell out the reason for selecting the European terrain as the basis for this manual. ✓<br>This will reinforce the above by confirming the applicability of land forces doctrine for large formations to the Canadian Forces in the European theatre.  |
| 8      | 1              | 106 |       |          | Delete.  | This article amounts to generalized statements-"motherhood". It is better that those important aspects of the terrain which affect operations are included in the chapters dealing with the various phases of war. For example, it would be better to describe the influence of built-up areas in the ✓  |

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |      |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | EXPLANATION  |
|--------|----------------|-----|------|----------|--|--|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA | SUB-PARA |  |  |
| 9      | 1              | 107 |      |          | Place at beginning of Section 2, after art 105.  | offensive and defensive chapters, clearly indicating the influence on those particular operations.<br>Logical flow.  |
| 10     | 1              | 108 | 2    |          | Delete the phrase "Pre-Nuclear and Nuclear" and insert "Conventional and Nuclear Warfare".   | See serial 2 above.  |
| 11     | 1              | 109 |      |          | Too general (and repetitive in nature) for a tactical manual. Should include specific mention of CIMIC operations in NATO Europe, referring to Territorial Forces of Germany as illustrated. | CIMIC Operations is an important staff function at corps and division levels.  |
| 12     | 1              | 110 |      |          | This is an important article and should be expanded upon to include more detail on interoperability. Reference could be made to current manuals in use on interoperability.                  | Canada's ground and air forces will initially be under operational control of allied forces.   |
| 13     | 1              | 111 |      |          | Shorten dramatically. Sub-paras 1, 2, 5 and 6 could be eliminated. Just capture the essence of the modern battlefield in a few lines.  | Material is covered in various NATO and ABCA concept papers.   |
| 14     | 1              | 111 | 3    |          | Insert "And Heavily Wooded Areas" after "Built-up Areas".  | These conditions exist in heavily wooded areas as well as built-up areas.  |
| 15     | 1              | 113 | 1    |          | Delete the phrase "A Force Will Obtain a Tactical Success if it has;" and insert "A Force should obtain tactical success if it has:"   | Current wording is too categorical, operations may or may not be successful with or without these conditions existing. History has proven that the outcome of war is not predictable.  |
| 16     | 1              | 113 |      |          | Either delete this article or replace it with a very short paragraph drawing attention to the principles of war.   | It would appear this article is attempting to draw on the principles of war without mentioning them. Afterall, the principles of war are well established as the foundations of success, and this should be what is used in this publication. To reduce volume, and to avoid "talking down" to the reader, it is suggested that any explanation of the principles of war merely be mentioned in the text and if considered necessary further elaboration be left to an annex.<br><br>.../3 |

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE     |                 |      |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE  | EXPLANATION   |
|--------|--------------------|-----------------|------|----------|---|---|
|        | CHAP               | ART             | PARA | SUB-PARA |   |   |
| 17     | 1                  | 114             | 2    |          | <p>Should include paragraph heading PROTECTING.</p> <p>Delete the word abstract.</p>  | <p>Conform with format for remainder of article.</p> <p>There is nothing abstract about concealment and dispersion. The term abstract might apply if the author was talking about such things as cover and deception. Perhaps these should be included in this paragraph.</p> |
| 18     | 1                  | 115             |      |          | <p>Should be near beginning of Chapter. Somewhat a rehash of the article on combat power - should be combined with it.</p>  | <p>For logical flow and to avoid repetition.</p>  |
| 19     | 1                  |                 |      |          | <p>Reduce chapter to the content of section one only.</p>   | <p>There is difficulty relating what is said to the subject of formations fighting, as the statements could be applied to any level from section to corp.</p>   |
| 20     | 2                  | 201             | 3    | d        | <p>Either delete this sub-paragraph or change the scope of the document to include the corp.</p>  | <p>The scope of the publication only goes as high as division, but this article infers that Canada will in fact expand its forces to the level where corps are organized. If this is the case, then this publication must include the corp level.</p>                         |
| 21     | 2                  |                 |      |          | <p>Section 2 should be rewritten to conform with the systems study.</p>   | <p>The basis of organization is explained more clearly and in more detail in the system study, and this publication would benefit from the inclusion of this material.</p>  |
| 22     | 2<br>(and Annex C) | 2               | 211  |          | <p>Add a caveat in the beginning of this article. A task force is difficult to define but would contain most of the following units. It would more than likely be disbanded at the completion of a mission or reorganized into a division or brigade group.</p> | <p>There appears to be a move to "formalize" the task force as a semi-permanent organization. One of the prime purposes of the Combat Development process is to develop a formation organization for war - it will not be a task force organization.</p>                      |
| 23     | 2                  | 216<br>&<br>217 |      |          | <p>Armoured Reconnaissance and Artillery should be included in article 217.</p>   | <p>A look at the new Canadian Division Reconnaissance Regiment (contains tanks, infantry) should be enough; also artillery is a combat arm, by the nature of their functions - otherwise infantry mortarmen should be excluded.</p>   |

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |       |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | EXPLANATION   |
|--------|----------------|-----|-------|----------|--|---|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA  | SUB-PARA |  |   |
| 24     | 2              | 217 | 4     |          | Recommend rewording. An FSCC is <u>not</u> "provided to" regimental COs or battery commanders. An FSCC is a location in a headquarters where representatives <u>from</u> fire support elements (e.g. arty tac) meets to co-ordinate fire. If a unit was unlucky enough not to have an artillery regiment or battery in direct support an FSCC would still function, without the artillery. |   |
| 25     | 2              | 217 | 5     | d        | Delete. The allotment of a rocket battery (which it is assumed this sub-para refers to) to a brigade would be quite normal, in certain circumstances however, this is not the place to be examining detailed allotment.  |   |
| 26     | 2              | 217 | 6     | a & b    | Amend "man portable missiles" to read "very low level SAMs"; amend "surface to air missile systems" to read "low level SAMs"; amend "anti-aircraft guns" to read "low level guns".   |   |
| 27     | 2              | 217 | 6     | d        | Amend "FSCC" to read "HQ" or "commander".  |   |
| 28     | 2              | 217 | 8     | b        | Is the allotment of the heavy anti-tank role to the infantry CF doctrine?  |   |
| 29     | 2              | 217 | 19    | d & e    | A statement should be included to indicate that trunk communications are based on a tactical area trunk system, normally established on a corp basis.  | The organization explained is designed specifically for tactical area trunk systems, and it does not make much sense unless the reader knows that this is the system that is established. |
| 30     | 2              | 217 | 20    | c        | Re-word to indicate that a task force will not have the capability of providing a tactical area trunk system, therefore, the resources to do so are apportioned to the task force headquarters and signals regiment and the brigade group headquarters and signals regiments.  | This sub-para does not make sense unless related to the establishment of a tactical area trunk system.  |
| 31     | 2              | 217 | 21-25 |          | Shorten and place immediately after para 18.   | The organizations will make a lot more sense if the communications they provide are first explained. There is too much detail, and it may be best to refer to CFP 321 Signals In Battle.  |

.../5



COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |       |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE  | EXPLANATION   |
|--------|----------------|-----|-------|----------|---|---|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA  | SUB-PARA |   |   |
| 38     | 3              | 308 | 3     | b        | Control of air defence is seldom delegated.   | <i>That's what was written</i>  |
| 39     | 3              | 308 | 2     |          | "At Priority Call" is now higher order of precedence (Arty study results)   |   |
| 40     | 3              | 308 | 7 & 8 |          | a. At Priority Call should precede In Direct Support.<br>b. Delete "guaranteed" and "temporarily" from last line of Para 7. (No artillery fire is guaranteed in Direct Support. At Priority Call may be applied for long time periods).<br>c. Delete "is usually temporary to meet a specific situation and". |   |
| 41     | 3              | 308 | 9     | a        | Delete "they are in range and". (Artillery cannot be In Support if it is not in range).   |   |
| 42     | 3              | 308 | 11    |          | With? <i>CSC</i>  |   |
| 43     | 3              | 312 | 2     | a        | Change wording to reflect the staff system adopted by the Canadian Forces.  | Present wording denotes the British staff system, while the possibility exists that the Canadian Forces will adopt another system, i.e. The Continental Staff System.                     |
| 44     | 3              | 313 | 2     | a        | Delete the word command.  | Staff do not command, they exercise control in the name of the commander.   |
| 45     | 3              | 314 | 3     |          | Examine the requirements for a chief of staff when there are only two subordinates.   | There is serious doubt that the organization of a div headquarters requires a chief of staff, unless the headquarters staff structure is changed to reflect the Continental Staff System. |
| 46     | 3              | 315 |       |          | Should identify other cells such as arty, engr, avn.  |   |
| 47     |                | 315 | 3     | c        | Nuclear fire planning and target analysis may also be done in the cells.  |   |
| 48     | 3              |     |       |          | Section 10 should be expanded to include an explanation of the staff planning process that takes place at the headquarters, as well as the battle procedure which applies to the entire formation.  | The battle procedure as explained is no different than that which is found at the company or battalion level. This publication must clearly   |

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE           |     |       |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | EXPLANATION  |
|--------|--------------------------|-----|-------|----------|--|--|
|        | CHAP                     | ART | PARA  | SUB-PARA |  |  |
| 49     | Annex A<br>to<br>Chapt 3 |     |       |          | This diagram mixes up the combat (i.e. arty) and combat support advisers with the command and control cells e.g. the TACP is <u>not</u> an adviser, the ALO is.  | indicate the complexities of staff planning at higher formation levels.  |
| 50     | Annex C<br>to<br>Chapt 3 |     |       |          | Div Arty should be shown (it is <u>not</u> the FSCC).  | It is ! Separately!  |
| 51     | 3                        |     |       |          | Review contents of chapter with the aim of reducing the duplication of material found in other publications, thereby reducing the chapter to a few succinct conclusions.   | The current chapter is very long and amounts to nothing more than a compendium of material found in other publications, such as CFP 303(2). This volume should not rehash such material, but add to it additional information which is applicable at the formation level, as opposed to material applicable to lower levels, or that which is general in nature and applies to all levels. |
| 52     | 4                        |     |       |          | Reduce section 2 to the bare essentials which are required in this book, namely articles 406 and 411.  | This section amounts to nothing more than a repeat of other publications. The author would be better to stick to describing the activities that take place at formation level, rather than try and summarize all the other publications he has used as references.   |
| 53     | 4                        | 422 | 2     | a & b    | a. Delete "altitude" insert "level" (NATO terms).<br>b. Delete "man portable air defence" insert "VLLSAM".   |  |
| 54     | 4                        | 422 | 4 & 6 |          | Should be reviewed and rewritten by DArty to reflect recent direction.   |  |
| 55     | 4                        | 435 | 1 & 2 |          | Fire planning is <u>not</u> fire support coordination (by recent DArty direction) Recommend definitions in CSC 203 Chapt 5 be used.<br><br>In particular, the term "fire support" must be clarified (Field artillery close air support, mortars, naval gunfire).<br><br>Note: See Serial 55A & 55B | .../8  |

Handwritten marks on the right margin: a vertical line with 'X' and checkmarks, and the word 'Separately!' written in a larger font.

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |            |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE  | EXPLANATION |
|--------|----------------|-----|------------|----------|---|-------------|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA       | SUB-PARA |   |             |
| 55A    |                | 443 | 1          |          | Line 3. Amend second sentence to read "In addition to counter air and other operations these tactical air forces will...."  | ✓           |
|        |                |     | 3          |          | Line 6. Delete sentence with sub-para<br><br>Renumber as para 4 and insert new para 3 to read:<br><br>3. The three main tasks in offensive air support operations are:<br><br>a. air interdiction operations (including battlefield air interdiction (BAI);<br><br>b. close air support operations; and<br><br>c. tactical reconnaissance operations.   | ✓           |
|        |                |     | 4<br>(new) |          | New para four "Interdiction Operations" Line 7 after "Weapons" delete period, add comma, insert "or beyond the interdiction planning line . Battlefield air interdiction is concerned with attacking specific targets which have a direct bearing or influence on the immediate operations of the land forces. Such missions take place in the battlefield area and directly affect the enemy's ability to continue or sustain operations. They are subject to close joint planning and are conducted normally beyond the Fire Support Coordination Line (FSCL) but short of the Reconnaissance and Interdiction Planning Line, indicating demarcation between the leading enemy armies and the reserve or follow up elements. Typical targets would be rear elements of the first echelon and advancing forward elements of the second echelon. Although requiring close joint planning these missions would not require the close control of the Close Air Support missions." |             |
|        |                |     | 4          |          | Line 10. Delete period, insert comma and add "With close joint planning and normally under close control during the attack".  |             |

.../9

- 9 -

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |      |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | EXPLANATION |
|--------|----------------|-----|------|----------|--|-------------|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA | SUB-PARA |  |             |
| 55B    |                |     | 5    |          | Para title should read "Tactical Air Reconnaissance Operations"  |             |
|        |                |     | 6    | a(1)     | Line one after planning insert "of requirements"   |             |
|        |                |     |      | (2)      | Amend to read "Translating priorities and broad apportionment of available air resources which come in percentages or weight of effort from theatre HQ into allocations of number of sorties by aircraft type and role"; |             |
|        |                |     |      | (3)      | Amend to read "day-to-day coordination and tasking of pre-planned air support, the acceptance, refusal or allotment of priority of air requests passed up the army command net; and"                                     |             |
|        |                |     | 7    | f        | Figure 4-8 insert note "In Europe the Theatre HQ (AFCENT/AAFGE) makes the initial priority distribution and apportionment of air resources to the Army Group/Air Force (CENTAG/4ATAF).                                   |             |
|        | 444            |     | 3    |          | Line 5 after coordinated insert "assigned priorities and"  |             |

.../10

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |      |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE  | EXPLANATION   |
|--------|----------------|-----|------|----------|---|---------------|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA | SUB-PARA |   |               |
| 56     | 4              |     | 450  | 5.c.3.   | Include personnel as well as eqpt.  | ✓             |
| 57     |                |     | 450  | 7.c.     | Reference to maintaining back-up admin and log documentation and cleft stick ops for log sp should be included.   | ✗             |
| 58     | 4              |     | 452  | 4        | "and the transportation units of..." is redundant. A transportation unit is a unit, if we are speaking here of a formation resource for decon purposes then we should identify it. However, I don't believe the Tn Bn is the one for the job. The Sup Bn's Decon Pl of the Ldry & Bath Coy, a Cas Decon Centre for the Med Bn as well as an Eqpt Decon Sect of Maint Bn are the second line resources required for the job. These in turn should be backed up by third line GS units. | Leave loose ✓ |
| 59     | 4              |     | 453  | 5        | Corps HQ plays an important role in the warning process as well i.e. alerting other Divs plus Corps troops - some of which will be involved in both G and log tasks in a div's contaminated area.   | ✓             |
| 60     | 4              |     | 454  | 5        | What resources has the Formation Surgeon? He is an advisor. Med resources should be part of the DISGP - policy! Med Bn is part of the DISGP and its resources are deployed by the DISGP Comd using Med Bn Comds (Fmn Surgeon?) to perform these functions. The correct relationship is spelled out later in text of Pg 4-201 Para 463.1. It might better be included here.  | ✗             |
| 61     | 4              |     | 454  | 7        | Who is Cbt Svc Sp Comd and what does he comd? Again the Total Logistics Argument.   | ✗             |
| 62     | 4              |     | 459  | 6        | Change "an independent Brigade Group has an integral Svc Bn" to "may have an integral Svc Bn or a logistics support group tailored for the task put under operational command".<br><br><u>Note:</u> Div HQ may well form a BG sized task force which will require logistics support. Therefore, similarly a specially tailored Sp Gp from logistics resources will be required. This concept should be incorporated.  | ✗             |

.../11

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |      |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | EXPLANATION  |
|--------|----------------|-----|------|----------|--|--|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA | SUB-PARA |  |  |
| 63     | 6              | 601 | 1    |          | Reword first sentence as follows: "Any military operation which is undertaken to counter enemy offensive operations is essentially defensive in nature".   | It is false to assume that defensive operations are only conducted in relation to the initiative of the enemy. In many cases, the decision to conduct defensive type operations is to exercise initiative, forcing the enemy to react in a desired way. Even conducting defensive operations, it is still possible to seize the initiative. ✓? |
| 64     | 6              |     | 1    | a        | Reword as follows "those operations undertaken to halt the enemy's advance or destroy his forces by holding ground and accepting decisive engagement".   | The current wording neglects one of the key reasons for conducting defence, attrition of enemy forces. ✓?  |
| 65     | 6              |     | 1    | c        | Reword as follows "An operation undertaken to create a more favourable tactical situation by breaking off engagements with the enemy in order to redeploy forces".   | The term "will of the commander" is nebulous. What is important, is that a withdrawal creates a more favourable situation. X   |
| 66     | 6              | 601 |      |          | Include a statement in article 601 to the effect that offensive actions are the only successful way of concluding operations, and defensive operations have as their overriding purpose the creation of more favourable circumstances under which to regain the initiative and conduct offensive operations. | This underlying reason for the conduct of defensive operations must be clearly stated at the beginning of the chapter. Its current treatment in para 3 of article 601 is not sufficient.   |
| 67     | 6              | 602 | 2    |          | Delete "Blocking operation" insert "Counter Penetration".  | The term describes counter penetration, while blocking operations can be more general in nature, ie as part of a covering force battle, and are not necessarily confined to the restoration of the FEBA. X   |
| 68     | 6              | 602 | 3    |          | Delete the term "Recapture vital ground" from sub-para a and b, and replace with the term "Restore the FEBA".  | In this context counter attacks have as their primary purpose the restoration of the FEBA in order to continue with successful defensive operations. ✓?  |

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |      |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE  | EXPLANATION  |
|--------|----------------|-----|------|----------|---|--|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA | SUB-PARA |   |  |
| 69     | 6              | 602 | 5    |          | Add the following to the end of the sentence "until the engagement is completed".   | This completes the thought process in this definition. <i>Maybe forever!</i>   |
| 70     | 6              | 602 | 6    | c        | Delete last sentence and insert "the enemy will only be engaged when necessary for self protection or to create the situations necessary to continue with the screening operation". | Screening infers gathering information and not engaging the enemy. See para 14.  |
| 71     | 6              | 603 | 3    |          | Rewrite.  | The current wording describes delaying operations and not defense based on mobility. Defense based on mobility is not a means of gaining time, nor is it an economy of force type operation. It is manoeuvring all forces in order to bring a maximum fire to bear on the advancing enemy and bring about his defeat. The mobility comes from manoeuvring in order to create favourable force ratios. Ground is not ceded to the enemy, forces are deployed to meet the enemy wherever he is, thus gaps left are not given up, it just means they are not occupied (the enemy does not hold this ground either).       |
| 72     | 6              | 604 |      |          | Rewrite.  | The author has completely missed the point. In positional defense troops occupy ground to prevent the enemy from occupying that terrain. In defense based on mobility, forces manoeuvre in order to engage and destroy the enemy. They are two different concepts and must be treated as such. Just because there is manoeuvre of forces in the positional defense does not mean that you can find a concept which melds together positional defense and defense based on mobility. The article as currently written describes the concept for positional defense, and if it is included, it should be titled as such. |
| 73     | 6              | 605 | 1    | b(1)     | Delete "A screening and/or guarding phase".   | This is covered in sub-para a.   |

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |      |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | EXPLANATION   |
|--------|----------------|-----|------|----------|--|---|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA | SUB-PARA |  |   |
| 74     | 6              | 605 | 1    | c        | Insert the following "the counter attack takes place when the defender seeks to exploit any weakness of the enemy forces in order to gain the initiative and regain control of the area".                  | The counter attack is more than just a prelude to offensive operations, it is the use of initiative in the defensive battle in order to be successful.  |
| 75     | 6              | 605 | 4    | a        | Reword as follows "Contain the enemy. The enemy advance must be either stopped or directed so that favourable force ratios can be created which will assure defeat of the enemy".                          | There is no FEBA as such in defense based on mobility, and I think what the author is trying to say is "hold the enemy so that he can be engaged by friendly forces".                                     |
| 76     | 6              | 605 | 4    | b        | Delete "mass defending forces" and insert "maintain or create favourable force ratios".  | It is not a matter of massing forces, it is a matter of manoeuvring forces so that in any particular area, the enemy does not have sufficient force ratios to bring about defeat of the defending forces. |
| 77     | 6              | 605 | 4    | c        | Delete.  | This applies only to positional defense and should be only mentioned in that context.   |
| 78     | 6              | 605 | 4    | d        | Include an explanation of how the situation is stabilized when conducting defense based on mobility, namely, when the enemy is attrited to the extent that he can no longer undertake offensive operation. | The current explanation deals only with positional defense.   |
| 79     | 6              | 607 |      |          | Place at beginning of chapter.   | It would make more sense to establish the fundamentals of the operation before describing how the operations are conducted.   |
| 80     | 6              | 608 |      |          | Delete.  | This article adds nothing to the chapter.   |
| 81     | 6              | 610 |      |          | Rewrite and place in the context of the staff planning process.  | The planning must include the staff activity that takes place as well as the responsibilities of the commander. This relates back to the chapter on command and control.                                  |

.../14

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |       |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | EXPLANATION   |
|--------|----------------|-----|-------|----------|--|---|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA  | SUB-PARA |  |   |
| 82     | 6              | 615 | 3 & 4 |          | Detail is too general in nature. Adds nothing to a "formations in battle" doctrine. Duplicated in other publications.  | Limit comments to employment of special formation unit such as div anti-tank, loc arty, div avn.                                      |
| 83     | 6              | 618 |       |          | Reduce to the information required to put offensive operations in the context of the defensive battle, and include their conduct in both a positional defense and a defense based on mobility.   | The current article repeats much information contained in the offensive chapter, and is based solely on a positional defense concept. |
| 84     | 6              | 624 |       |          | Rewrite to include a description of the main defense battle when the concept is defense based on mobility.   | The current article concerns itself only with positional defense.   |
| 85     | 6              | 645 |       |          | Rec Areas should be estb through which withdrawing troops can gain immediate first aid. In these Rec Areas should be: a Reporting Centre so Div HQ knows what elms, sect, units etc are through; MP post to provide TC; A Med Dressing Station to take off serious CAS and evac them; POL pt for emergency replen; Ammo Pt for emergency issue to permit a basic amount of ammo for local protection and AD. Add a MRT to provide bailing wire type sp and Rec of crocks. Also nec comms are required. |   |
| 86     | 7              | 702 |       |          | Should reflect CF interim doctrine on conventional and conventional nuclear (i.e. nuclear and pre-nuclear).  |   |
| 87     | 7              | 704 | 1     |          | Paragraph is not precise and does not explain <u>real</u> meaning of conventional nuclear.   |   |
| 88     | 7              | 706 |       |          | The figure 100-200 is probably too <u>high</u> .   | OK - 45 NBC brief <i>QW</i> NBC   |
| 89     | 8              | 707 | 1a, b |          | The time frame and span figures should be confirmed.   | 11  |
| 90     | 9              | 715 | 2c    |          | The procedure described should be confirmed (it would work if only one weapon was fired but not if 50-60 were).  |   |

✓  
 ✓  
 No  
 X  
 No  
 No  
 X  
 X

- 14 -

COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1)

FORMATIONS IN BATTLE (FIRST DRAFT)

| SERIAL | TEXT REFERENCE |     |         |          | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | EXPLANATION |
|--------|----------------|-----|---------|----------|--|-------------|
|        | CHAP           | ART | PARA    | SUB-PARA |  |             |
| 91     | 8              | 805 | 6       |          | Content of this para is not adopted to div and bde levels.   |             |
| 92     |                | 806 | 2       |          | Should include as a factor the availability of infantry.   |             |
| 93     |                |     | 6       |          | Line 1. Delete "stages" insert "phrases". These phrases should be identified as in ATP 35 para 1410.   |             |
| 94     |                |     | 11      |          | This para should be viewed from a higher level.  |             |
| 95     |                |     | 12 & 13 |          | These paras should be guidance for bde and div staff in planning log requirements.   |             |
| 96     |                | 807 |         |          | The content of this article is well suited for CFP 309-1.  |             |
| 97     | 8              | 815 |         |          | Extracting infantry from their mechanized organization for employment in airmobile operations is a serious decision. This problem should be studied and guidelines offered to the bde and div cmd. |             |

No X X X  
 No X

**CHIEF LAND DOCTRINE  
AND OPERATIONS**  
NOV 29 1979

MEMORANDUM

*DASS comments*  
*(25)*

2910-CFP 301(1) (DSRO 2)

*28* Nov 79

*D*  
DLP

CFP 301(1) - FORMATIONS IN BATTLE - FIRST DRAFT

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) DLP 4 5 Oct 79

1. To meet the terms of paragraph 4 of Ref A, the attached Annex A details recommended changes using specifics and brief explanations. Although the document was reviewed from a field supply viewpoint, some recommendations have a significant effect on combat service support organizations and concept of operations.

2. Assumption. The first draft of CFP 301(1) is an umbrella type doctrinal publication which must be supported by other subordinate and future publications such as CFP 312. Therefore, it was considered important to comment upon the general direction of the doctrine in view of other major studies currently ongoing.

TASK FORCE

3. It is considered that the doctrine should reflect the need for a separate CSS headquarters as part of a task force described in CFP 301(1). From the description of the task force, it is a transitional formation. Part of that transition should include a CSS headquarters which would provide formation service support flexibility, a good degree of centralized functional command and control, and the nucleus of a later full blown DISGP of a division. It is expected that the aim is to provide the best possible service support to the formation, however, the principle of the staff undertaking the functions of CSS co-ordination has the following ramifications:

- a. the decision, in fact, is a reversal of previous evolutionary decisions which recognized that the service support line and staff functions be split in a brigade group as enunciated through the Army Doctrine and Tactics Board. This principle is equally, if not more, valid for a task force since conditions will be more complex; and
- b. the staff, who should be busy enough doing their primary function, will neither have the time nor the resources to do the best job.

*Too late for CFP 301*  
*[Signature]*

*(2) Dec 4*  
*[Signature]*  
*29 Nov 79*

- 2 -

4. It is agreed that brigade group service support resources could remain integral to the brigade group. However, a case can also be made for part of these organic service battalions to revert to command of a CSS headquarters. Both possibilities should be recognized in doctrine so that options for future publications are allowed.

DIVISION

5. It is agreed that centralized command and control along with functional rear battalions would provide excellent combat service support to the division. However, since, from the organization chart at figure 2-E1, each brigade has been organized on a fixed structure, consistently a standard (or minimum) degree of repair, recovery, and resupply will be required. Consequently, it would appear more appropriate to establish a small headquarters and log ops centre together with CSS elements into a formal entity to provide that support. Thus, a light composite service battalion is envisaged which, although still under command of the DISGP HQ, would support the brigade on an SOP basis.

6. It is not intended now to firmly state that the above recommended approach is the only course to follow. Rather, it is pointed out as an option that should be recognized in any doctrine as a feasible means of maintaining the overall combat service support aim.

7. Service advisers should be part of the division headquarters as opposed to being "dual-hatted" as battalion commanders in an advisory role. It is considered that the battalion commanders will be fully employed in their command and resource control functions. The service advisers, on the other hand, should be fully employed in advising, liaison with lower, higher and allied headquarters and units, setting technical policy for the division as well as assisting staff planners.

  
E.O. Hardy  
BGen  
DGSS  
3-2100

Attachment:

ANNEX A

# Ref-DASS Comment 1

## Heck

1. One of MANICACCI's ideas is gradually acquiring currency in CA & NATO. He found the terminology of AAP-6 unsatisfactory in respect of logistics, administration, & combat service support. The ideas now reflect in a draft ch of ATP-35 & in the CSS Study referred to by Russ Allen.

2. The idea distinguished between the log & admin activity & the CSS activity in terms of authority. Log & Admin was concerned with the flows outside the commander's authority (area of responsibility) by which a command is sustained (over the L&C). CSS, by contrast was the concern of the commander - concerned with the use of the stocks over which his authority extended. As Manicacci put it "Logistics is specialist activity that occurs behind the command; Combat Service Sp is the application of the command's resources within the command area."

3. If this distinction is useful, use it, but don't get bogged down trying to inject it if the opportunity to do so easily has passed.

Dick

ANNEX A  
 To 2910-CFP 301(1)  
 Dated 28 Nov 79

| SERIAL | PAGE & TEXT REF   | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | REASON  |
|--------|---|--|---|
| 1.     | 2-4, Art 206.<br><i>See note attached on separate sheet attached these comments</i> | Heading - delete "Administration"<br>Insert: "Combat Service Support"  | The term no longer conveys the meaning intended. CSS sub study of CDC refers.   |
| 2.     | 2-12, Art 212<br>Para 1<br><i>In task force maybe, but not in blogs</i>             | After last sentence add new sentence: "Therefore, some centralization may be accomplished for combat service support by establishing a CSS headquarters and placing all, or part of, the service battalions under its command".  | Because the task force is a transitional formation, this step could be taken as part of the transition. It is an option that should be allowed if circumstances warrant.    |
| 3.     | 2-45, Art 218,<br>Para 1b   | Delete last sentence.  | This is a debatable opinion and thus should not be expressed within a doctrine manual.  |
| 4.     | 2-45, Art 218,<br>Para 1c   | In second sentence after "function" delete: "adequately"; after "support" delete: "," insert ". Because"; after "flexibility" delete remainder of sentence. Insert: "a separate CSS headquarters is established for coordination and centralization of combat service support resources as necessary". | See Serial 2 above.   |
| 5.     | 2-46, Art 218,<br>Para 1d   | After "battalions is" delete: "discarded. The functional companies of the service battalions are grouped into functional battalion for transport, supply, maintenance, and medical support under the command of a headquarters Divisional Service Group. "Insert:                                      | This organizational structure provides the greatest degree of flexibility to the Div Comd. Coord and can is simplified and still centralized. Deployment is more automatic. |

PAGE TWO  
TO ANNEX A  
TO 2910-CFP 301(1)  
DATED 28 Nov 79

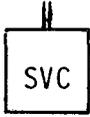
| SERIAL     | PAGE & TEXT REF             | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | REASON                 |
|------------|-----------------------------|--|------------------------|
| 5. (con't) |                             | "changed. Light service battalions are formed to provide service support to each brigade. The remaining combat service support resources are grouped into functional battalions. However, all combat service support resources are placed under command of a headquarters Divisional Support Group"                      |                        |
| 6.         | 2-46, Art 218<br>Para 1e ✓  | After "groupings" delete: ", or <u>ad hoc</u> service battalions".   | As for serial 5 above. |
| 7.         | Delete                      |  |                        |
| 8.         | 2-49, Art 218,<br>Para 2c ✓ | After 2c(1) insert: "(2)a Service battalion for each brigade and for Div Tps," Renumber remaining dub-sub-paragraphs.  | as for serial 5 above. |
| 9.         | 2-49, Art 218               | Delete sub para 3c in its entirety. Insert new para as follows:<br><br>"4. <u>Service Battalions</u><br><br>a. These battalions are composite in nature and are established on the basis of one for each brigade and one for Div Tps. They are responsible for maintenance and repair in situ of organic bde equipments, | As for serial 5 above. |

.../3

PAGE THREE  
 TO ANNEX A  
 To 2910-CFP 301(1)  
 Dated 28 Nov 79

| SERIAL     | PAGE & TEXT REF  | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | REASON  |
|------------|--|--|---|
| 9. (con't) | a. (con't)   | <p>supply and transport of the bde maintenance load and a small range of fast moving repair parts, gen and tech stores. The service battalion organizations can vary depending upon the type of organization supported. Sub-organizations may be attached or detached depending upon the mission of the formation supported. However, it will normally consist of the following -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) A headquarters,</li> <li>(2) A Supply and Transport Company,</li> <li>(3) A Maintenance Company.</li> </ul> |   |
|            |  | b. The service battalions draw replenishment and additional support requirements from the Division's functional battalions.  |   |
| 10.        | 2-50, Art 218<br>Para 4 & 4a                                     | <p>✓ Renumber para to read "5"<br/>                     After "security equipment" delete: "engineer".</p>   | <p>There is no reason why engineer stores cannot be handled in a Div supply bn</p>  |
| 11.        | 2-50, Art 218<br>Para 4b(2),<br>4b(3), 4b(4),<br>4b(5) and 4b(6) | <p>✓ Delete all after "company" in each sub-sub-paragraph.</p>   | <p>The above recommendations, if accepted, require removal of some resources to form part of the light service battalions. The functions alone will likely require company sized organizations. Their composition, however, would require more study.</p> |

PAGE FOUR  
 TO ANNEX A  
 To 2910-CFP 301(1)  
 Dated 28 Nov 79

| SERIAL | PAGE & TEXT REF                | RECOMMENDED CHANGE  | REASON                            |
|--------|--------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| 12.    | Figure 2 - C1                  | Delete: "  "<br>Add: "  "   | See Serial 2 above                |
| 13.    | 3-24, Art 314,<br>Para 6b<br>✓ | After "Group" insert:<br>"the Divisional Transport<br>Officer, the Divisional<br>Supply Officer, the<br>Divisional Maintenance<br>Officer,"<br><br>Delete last sentence<br>in its entirety.   | See para 7 of covering memorandum |
| 14.    | 3-37, Art 318<br>Para 1<br>✓   | Delete ", who also command divisional combat service support units,"  | See Serial 13 above.              |
| 15.    | 3-44, Art 321<br>Para 1<br>✓   | After "units" delete<br>remainder of sentence.<br>Add: "and combat service<br>support advisers on permanent<br>establishment of the brigade/<br>brigade group".   | See Serial 13 above               |
| 16.    | 3-44, Art 321,<br>Para 2<br>✓  | Delete: "These officers"<br>Insert: "The Commanding<br>Officers".   | See Serial 13 above               |
| 17.    | 3-45, Art 321,<br>Para 4<br>✓  | After "located" delete<br>remainder of paragraph.<br>Insert: "at brigade,<br>brigade group or division<br>headquarters. Their advice<br>will be available either direct<br>or through the S02/SSO Adm at<br>brigade/brigade group headquarters<br>or the DCOS Adm at division headquarters. | See Serial 13 above               |

PAGE FIVE  
 TO ANNEX A  
 To 2910-CFP 301(1)  
 Dated 28 Nov 79

| SERIAL       | PAGE & TEXT REF           | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | REASON  |               |                 |                         |
|--------------|---------------------------|--|---|---------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 18.          | 3-47, Art 323<br>Para 1b  | After sub-sub-para(2) add:<br>"(3) service support<br>advisers" and renumber<br>subsequent sub-sub-paras.  | See Serial 13 above.  |               |                 |                         |
| 19.          | 3-51, Art 327,<br>Para 1a | Delete: (5) the logistics<br>operations center".   | The Log Ops Center is<br>part of the Svc Bn HQ<br>normally located<br>separately. |               |                 |                         |
| 20.          | Figure 3-A1               | Under "cvt svc sp advisers"<br>add:<br><table border="1" style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">TN<br/>(LCOL)</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">SUP<br/>(LCOL)</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">MAINT<br/>(LCOL)</td> </tr> </table>  | TN<br>(LCOL)  | SUP<br>(LCOL) | MAINT<br>(LCOL) | As for Serial 13 above. |
| TN<br>(LCOL) | SUP<br>(LCOL)             | MAINT<br>(LCOL)  |   |               |                 |                         |
| 21.          | Figure 3-B1               | Under "cvt svc sp advisers"<br>add:<br><table border="1" style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">TN<br/>(CAPT)</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">SUP<br/>(CAPT)</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">MAINT<br/>(CAPT)</td> </tr> </table> <p>Delete Notes 4 and 5 in<br/>its entirety.</p> | TN<br>(CAPT)  | SUP<br>(CAPT) | MAINT<br>(CAPT) | As for Serial 13 above. |
| TN<br>(CAPT) | SUP<br>(CAPT)             | MAINT<br>(CAPT)  |   |               |                 |                         |
| 22.          | Figure 3-F1               | In Orders Group under<br>Brigade/Brigade Group<br>After CO Svc Bn delete:<br>"in bde gp".<br><br>In B echelon under Brigade/<br>Brigade Group after "BAA<br>under" delete: "FLCC or"   | As for Serial 5 above.  |               |                 |                         |
| 23.          | 4-188, Art 459<br>Para 4. | In third sentence after<br>"field ambulances delete<br>remainder of sentence.<br>Add: "and service<br>battalions".   | As for Serial 5 above.  |               |                 |                         |

PAGE SIX  
TO ANNEX A  
To 2910-CFP 301(1)  
Dated 28 Nov 79

| SERIAL | PAGE & TEXT REF                | RECOMMENDED CHANGE   | REASON   |
|--------|--------------------------------|--|--|
| 24.    | 4-199, Art 461,<br>Para 14.    | After paragraph 14 add<br>new paras to cover<br>following:<br><br>15. Repair Parts<br>16. Gen and Tech Stores<br>17. Vehicles<br>18. Major Weapons Systems<br>19. Other Commodities. | No attempt has been made<br>to write these paragraphs.<br>Article 461 covers only<br>a part, albeit important,<br>of the types of supplies<br>required in the formation.<br>A short paragraph on the<br>recommended additions would<br>cover the whole subject of<br>resupply in general ter-<br>minology. |
| 25.    | 8-127, Art 827,<br>Sub para a. | After "all" insert:<br>"possible".   | There is no difficulty when<br>handing over between like<br>Canadian units, but when<br>handing over to other allied<br>units, this statement<br>requires qualification.<br>Thus, the addition of<br>"possible".   |

N. D. M. S. / P. A.

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301-1

~~2910-CFP 301(1)~~ (DSRO 2)

21 Nov 79

DLP

CFP 301(1) - FORMATIONS IN BATTLE - FIRST DRAFT

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) DLP 4 5 Oct 79

1. To meet the terms of paragraph 4 of Ref A, the attached Annex A details recommended changes using specifics and brief explanations. Although the document was reviewed from a field supply viewpoint, some recommendations have a significant effect on combat service support organizations and concept of operations.
2. Assumption. The first draft of CFP 301(1) is an umbrella type doctrinal publication which must be supported by other subordinate and future publications such as CFP 312. Therefore, it was considered important to comment upon the general direction of the doctrine in view of other major studies currently ongoing.

TASK FORCE

3. It is considered that the doctrine should reflect the need for a separate CSS headquarters as part of a task force described in CFP 301(1). From the description of the task force, it is a transitional formation. Part of that transition should include a CSS headquarters which would provide formation service support flexibility, a good degree of centralized functional command and control, and the nucleus of a later full blown DISGP of a division. It is expected that the aim is to provide the best possible service support to the formation, however, the principle of the staff undertaking the functions of CSS co-ordination has the following ramifications:
  - a. the decision, in fact, is a reversal of previous evolutionary decisions which recognized that the service support line and staff functions be split in a brigade group as enunciated through the Army Doctrine and Tactics Board. This principle is equally, if not more, valid for a task force since conditions will be more complex; and
  - b. the staff, who should be busy enough doing their primary function, will neither have the time nor the resources to do the best job.

- 2 -

4. It is agreed that brigade group service support resources could remain integral to the brigade group. However, a case can also be made for part of these organic service battalions to revert to command of a CSS headquarters. Both possibilities should be recognized in doctrine so that options for future publications are allowed.

#### DIVISION

5. It is agreed that centralized command and control along with functional rear battalions would provide excellent combat service support to the division. However, since, from the organization chart at figure 2-E1, each brigade has been organized on a fixed structure, consistently a standard (or minimum) degree of repair, recovery, and resupply will be required. Consequently, it would appear more appropriate to establish a small headquarters and log ops centre together with CSS elements into a formal entity to provide that support. Thus, a light composite service battalion is envisaged which, although still under command of the DISGP HQ, would support the brigade on an SOP basis.

6. It is not intended now to firmly state that the above recommended approach is the only course to follow. Rather, it is pointed out as an option that should be recognized in any doctrine as a feasible means of maintaining the overall combat service support aim.

7. Service advisers should be part of the division headquarters as opposed to being "dual-hatted" as battalion commanders in an advisory role. It is considered that the battalion commanders will be fully employed in their command and resource control functions. The service advisers, on the other hand, should be fully employed in advising, liaison with lower, higher and allied headquarters and units, setting technical policy for the division as well as assisting staff planners.

  
E.O. Hardy

BGen

DGSS

3-2100

Attachment:

ANNEX A

~~606~~ NDRMS

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301-1

2910 CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)

27 Nov 79

DLP

CFP 301(1) - FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FIRST DRAFT

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) DLP 4 5 Oct 79

1. As requested, Annex A to this memo provides comments.

*R. B. Screenshot*

*for*

R. B. Screenshot  
BGen  
DGLEM  
2-2886

Attacment: Annex A

ANNEX A

TO 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)

DATED 27 NOV 79

| Page | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|------|-----------------|--|
| 1-1  | 102.1           | Insert "tough, well trained and mechanized" vice "sophisticated".  |
| 1-2  | 103.1           | Insert "of its administrative" vice "its logistic".  |
| 1-2b | 106-1           | Insert "a variety of well developed industries" vice "sophisticated".<br>Insert word "airfields" following word "railways" and word "mountains" after word "lakes".  |
| 1-3  | 106.2           | Insert word "often" after word "ground" in third sentence.<br>Delete all after word "forces" in third sentence as Fire and Movement is basic in all types of terrain.  |
| 1-8  | 106.9a          | Insert words "if undefended" after word "may" in first sentence and end sentences after word "lowlands".<br>Insert new second sentence "However, if cleverly exploited they can produce many critical....."                                    |
| 1-8  | 106             | Should be renumbered 107 as para 106 starts on Page 1-2a. Subsequent changes must be made to following paras and index. Note it corrects itself by para 113 as no paras 111 or 112 are listed. Para 112 would occur at Section 3 of Page 1-17. |
| 1-9  | 106.7           | Start para with "Without good leadership and discipline long periods ....."  |
| 1-16 | 110.2           | Insert "administrative" vice "logistic" in first sentence.   |
| 1-18 | 3               | Insert "areas where movement is restricted by terrain or urbanization" vice "built-up areas" in the first sentence.<br>Insert "plans, orders, drills" before word "communications".  |
| 1-19 | 111.7           | Insert "well led" before "highly motivated" in second sentence.<br>Delete "the delay" in the fourth sentence as this is part of the defence or the withdrawal.   |

.../2

| Page | Text Ref (Para) | Comment   |
|------|-----------------|---|
| 1-20 | 113.1           | Insert "Combat Power" vice "some other form" in fourth sentence.<br>Insert "superiority" vice "superior combat power", word "from" following word "derived" and delete the word "the" prior to the word "skills" in the fifth sentence. |
| 1-21 | 113.2           | Insert the words "at least" prior to the word "two" in the sixth sentence.  |
| 1-22 | 113.3           | Insert word "training" prior to word "discipline" in first sentence.  |
| 1-23 | 113.6           | Add to the last sentence "or even something as basic as an absence of any aircraft in the battle area caused by adverse weather conditions".  |
| 1-24 | 114.1           | Add to the second to last sentence "and thus defeat him".   |
| 1-25 | 114.4           | Comment re last sentence. Suggest that effective command and control enhances both stability and balance while movement may inhibit one or both.  |
| 1-27 | 115.2.(3)       | Insert word "administrative support" vice "logistic support and maintenance".   |
| 1-29 | 115.4           | The first sentence should include effective leadership, command and control as necessary to a successful execution at ground level.   |
| 2-2  | 202.1           | Suggest erm "administrative support" vice "maintenance" in first sentence.  |
| 2-4  | 206.1           | Insert "administratively supporting" vice "administering and maintaining" in the first sentence.  |
| 2-4  | 2-6.1           | Insert "repair, recovery, transport, medical services" following the word "stores".   |
| 2-5  | 207.2           | Insert "unit structures which permit dispersion while retaining the ability to concentrate and organic to the formation" vice word "organic" in the first sentence.   |
| 2-6  | 208.3           | Insert "command functions" vice "decision making".  |

| Page | Text Ref (Para) | Comment   |
|------|-----------------|---|
| 2-10 | 210.I.b(6)      | Should read "the divisional service group" to be consistent with terminology in para 218.   |
| 2-10 | 210.1.c.        | If the division contains 3 brigades then page 2-2 para 201.3.c. should be amended accordingly.  |
| 2-11 | 212.2           | Insert "brigade group" vice "brigade".  |
| 2-14 | 216.1.h.        | Query. Can they control and administer up to five brigades without augmentation?  |
| 2-15 | 216.2.b.        | Insert "administrative" vice "logistics".   |
| 2-31 | 217.20.b        | Insert "Signals Squadron signals equipment" vice "signals equipment" and "when required" following the word "assistance". Note that the supporting maintenance organizations and personnel also have responsibilities for technical advice. |
| 2-31 | 217.23.c(3)     | Delete word "arms" in sixth line as this would exclude the signals, engineer and aviation units etc.  |
| 2-45 | 218.1.c.        | Insert "as well as providing additional combat service support" vice "who provide additional combat service support" in the first sentence.   |
| 2-46 | 218.1.c         | Insert "combat service support" vice "combat support".  |
| 2-48 | 218.2.b.(4)     | Insert "less cryptographic equipment" following word "equipment".   |
| 2-51 | 218.6.a.(1)     | Insert "land technical equipment less aircraft and cryptographic equipment" vice "equipment less aircraft".   |
| 2-52 | 218.6.a(8)      | Insert new sub-sub-para "arrange the back loading of salvage".  |
| 2-52 | 218.6.b(3)      | Insert "land technical equipment less aircraft and cryptographic equipment particularly to the equipments" vice entire line four of that sub-para.  |
| 2-53 | 218.6.b(3)(c)   | Insert "within the division" at the end of the sentence.  |
| 2-55 | 218.6.c.        | Subsections are numbered incorrectly.   |

| Page           | Text Ref (Para)     | Comment  |
|----------------|---------------------|--|
| 2-55           | 218.6.c(2)          | Line 8. Insert "(less cryptographic maintenance)" following word "maintenance".<br><br>Insert unnumbered sub-para at top of 2-56 as sub-sub para (b) and delete both sup-paras (1) and (2) on the lower part of page 2-55. (They are redundant and confusing). |
| 2.56           | 218.6.c(2)          | Delete first three lines at top of this page. (Redundant).   |
| 2-63           | 219.4.a             | Why is this the "Corps Support Command" vice "Corps Service Command". At the divisional level it is "Divisional Service Group" not Divisional Support Group. The terms should be consistent.   |
| 2-63           | 219.4.a.(2).and (3) | The term "divisional support group" is used here but "divisional service group" was used throughout para 218. The designation should be consistent and should read "service" vice "support".   |
| 2-63           | 219.4               | Paragraph numbering 4. is wrong.   |
| 2-63           | 219.4.a.(1)         | Insert word "administration" vice word "maintenance".  |
| 2-63           | 219.4               | Seven lines from bottom. Should read "Corps Service Command".<br><br>Six lines from bottom. Should read "supply group" vice "support group".   |
| 2-64           | 219.4.c             | Should read "maintenance group" vice "supply group" in line one.   |
| 2-64           | 219.4.c.(1)         | Should read "additional recovery support" vice "additional recovery vehicles."   |
| 2-64           | 219.4.c.(4)         | Add new sub-para "assistance with repair services for vehicles, weapons, radio and land technical equipment and with backloading of salvage."  |
| 2-A1 thru 2-E1 |                     | Presumably these organization charts are subject to change and will be based, in the final analysis, on the Combat Development Process.  |
| 3-1            | 301                 | Second to last sentence. Insert "good training, well developed SOPs" following the word "communications".  |
| 3-1            | 302.1               | Second sentence. Insert "superior professional knowledge, integrity" vice "he must have".  |

ANNEX A

- 5 -

TO 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)

DATED 27 NOV 79

| Page | Text Ref (Para) | Comment   |
|------|-----------------|---|
| 3-2  | 302.5           | Insert at end of paragraph "The need for the commander to recognize valour and superior service is also required. He must devote the same sort of attention to honours and awards as he does to discipline."  |
| 3-5  | 304.2           | Insert at end of paragraph "Training and exercises must constantly foster the disciplined initiative of subordinate commanders at all levels for results of the commanders concept of operations to achieve its maximum portential."  |
| 3-7  | 307.1           | Insert word "officer" after word "staff" in the second to last line.  |
| 3-11 | 308.9           | Insert "(excluding artillery)" following the word "communications" in line four.  |
| 3-11 | 308-9.a         | Insert "Artillery may also be allotted "In Support" for a particular mission or period of time" at the end of this paragraph.   |
| 3-15 | 309.3.c(1)      | Insert "rations" vice "supplies" in the first sentence.   |
| 3-15 | 309.3.e(2)(a)   | Insert "accommodation space similar to that for their own troops" vice "accommodation". Note normally troops assigned under this relationship should arrive self-contained insofar as tentage is concerned.   |
| 3-19 | 312.2.b         | <p>This must be redefined. The special staff provides the commander with the more specialized technical and professional expertise he requires. Within the Administrative Branches the special staff will include those personnel responsible for the personnel, transportation, supply, maintenance (land), maintenance (air) and food services disciplines. Theirs is the primary responsibility for provision of appropriate advice to the commander through the chain of command in their respective disciplines. It should also be noted that the DISGP commander or alternately the Service Battalion CO is a combat service support advisor (not staff) to the commander and his staff for those same functions as may be required or necessary.</p> <p>The combat service support advisors are <u>NOT</u> special staff and must be distinguished from the staff.</p> |

.../6

ANNEX A

TO 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)  
 DATED 27 NOV 79

| Page | Text Ref (Para)   | Comment   |
|------|-------------------|---|
| 3-19 | 312.2.b (Cont'd.) | The existing para should be deleted and be replaced by the following new para " <u>Special Staff</u> . This staff provides the commander with the more specialized technical and professional expertise that he requires. They do have advisory responsibilities but do not have any command responsibilities, and they work through the normal chain of command. This staff has authority to liaise to the next higher and lower levels within their respective disciplines. (eg: the service support staff officers in the logistics cell).   |
| 3-20 | 312.2.d.          | In conjunction with the new para 312.2.b. there should be a new para 312.2.d as follows:<br><br>" <u>Advisors</u> . In addition to the various types of staff the formation commander has at his disposal, he also has a number of combat support and combat service support advisors. These advisors command their own units (excluding the Chaplains) and while they do have the right of direct access to the commander, they normally work through, in the case of the combat support advisors, the DCOS Ops (SSO Ops/SO2 Ops) or in the case of the combat service support advisors, the DCOS Adm (SSO Adm/SO2 Adm). |
| 3-20 | 313.1.a.          | Insert at beginning "assisting the commander in planning and"   |
| 3-21 | 313.2.a.          | Insert at beginning "assisting the commander in".   |
| 3-22 | 313.2.g           | Insert "administrative" vice "logistic"   |
| 3.22 | 313.2.h.          | The wording "in close support" is confusing. If this means in the A2 echelon area or forward of the BAA it should be specific. Within the BAA the Service Battalion does this function.   |
| 3-22 | 314.2             | Delete existing second sentence and insert a new second sentence as follows: "The headquarters includes a number of special staff, some advisors and a small personal staff."   |
| 3-23 | 314.5.a           | Delete existing sub-para and insert new sub-para as follows:<br><br>"Personnel which consists of the special staff-personnel and is subdivided into a personnel (PERS) and a personnel services (PER SVCS) cell; and"   |
| 3-23 | 314.5.b           | Delete existing sub-para and insert new sub-para as follows:  |

| Page | Text Ref (Para)  | Comment   |
|------|------------------|---|
| 3-23 | 314.5.b (Cont'd) | "Logistics which consists of the special staff - logistics and is subdivided into transportation (TN), land maintenance (Maint L), air maintenance (Maint A), supply (Sup) and food services (F Svcs) cells."<br>Note the addition of the food services officer.  |
| 3-24 | 314.6.b          | Delete existing last two sentences and insert the following in lieu: "When a task force is formed, the combat service support advisors continue to retain direct access to the commander but normally work through the Deputy Chief of Staff Administration (DCOS Adm). In a division the relationship is similar and they would normally report through the Commander DISGP and the DCOS Adm." |
| 3-24 | 315.1            | Insert word "advice" after word "information" in the second sentence.   |
| 3-26 | 315.3.a.(13)     | Insert new sub-para "control of scarce or controlled resources including supplies and reinforcements."  |
| 3-26 | 315.3.b.(6)      | Insert new sub-para "control of real estate in conjunction with the operations cell (para 315.3.a(20))"   |
| 3-28 | 316.1.f          | Insert "personnel" vice "administrative."   |
| 3-31 | 316.4            | This section should include the food services cell in the heading and should contain a food services sub-section.   |
| 3.32 | 316.4.b.(3)      | Insert "monitoring" vice "supervising"  |
| 3.33 | 316.4.b.(8)      | Delete - this is a function that belongs in the DISGP. Insert instead a new sub-para (8) as follows:<br>"Liaison with maintenance staffs and personnel at higher and lower formations."   |
| 3-33 | 316.4.c.(1)      | Insert at beginning "policy on" as provision is not a staff function.   |
| 3-33 | 316.4.c.(4)      | Insert at beginning "In conjunction with maintenance staff establish policy."   |
| 3-37 | 318.1            | Delete existing paragraph and insert a new one as follows:<br>"Combat service support advisors who also command their own units, work closely in conjunction with the Administrative Branch (and its special staff) and normally receive their administrative orders and introductions from DCOS Adm."  |

| Page | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|------|-----------------|--|
| 3-37 | 318.2           | Delete existing paragraph and insert a new one as follows:<br>"They are responsible, within their function, for providing the commander and his staff with advice as requested or as they deem necessary. They retain the right of direct access to the commander on matters within their purview."  |
| 3-37 | 318-3           | Delete existing first line and insert in lieu:<br>"The formation headquarters is responsible for the promulgation of orders and the provision of direction. In technical matters the special staff of the formation work in close consultation with the combat service support advisors to do this. In conjunction with the divisional staff the combat service support advisors have a responsibility for the provision of general direction, supervision, control and liaison as follows." |
| 3-41 | 320.4.c         | Insert word "administrative" prior to word "movement" as operational movement orders are an operations staff function.   |
| 3-41 | 320.4.e         | Insert words "personnel" and "prior" to the word logistics.  |
| 3-43 | 320.4.q         | Insert new sub-para q "liaison with administrative staffs and personnel at higher and lower formations.  |
| 3-43 | 320.6           | Delete the last sentence and insert in lieu:<br>"The SO2/SSO Adm prepares the administrative plan utilizing the advice of his own staff and the combat service support advisors. The combat service support (advisors) commanders execute the plans."  |
| 3-43 | 321.1           | Delete first two words "Special staff" and insert in lieu "Advisors".  |
| 3-44 | 321.2           | Insert "excluding chaplains" following the second word, "officers."  |
| 3-45 | 321.4           | Insert a new sentence at the end of the paragraph as follows: "It should be noted that combat service support expertise and advice is available within the administrative branch itself and this source should be exploited first."  |
| 3-47 | 323.1.a.(7)     | Insert "The Division Military Police Officer."<br>He should be part of the Operations Staff.   |

ANNEX A

TO 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)

DATED 27 NOV 79

| Page  | Text Ref (Para) | Comment   |
|-------|-----------------|---|
| 3-47  | 323.1.b.(3)     | Delete "The Division Military Police Officer". Note this is consistent with the split at the Bde/Bde Gp level.  |
| 3-49  | 324.4(h)        | Insert new sub-para "the step up group."  |
| 3-51  | 327.1.(s)       | Delete "the logistics operations centre" and insert "the administrative cell."  |
| 3-62  | 332.1.          | Insert word "coordination" after word "cooperation".  |
| 3-A1  |                 | This should be amended in accordance with para 314.5.b and 316.4 (food services). It should also be noted that since they are shown here, there should be some mention of the financial and postal functions and their relationships (staff/advisors) in the text. If they are only found within the DISGP divisional service battalion they could be deleted from their chart. |
| 3-B1  |                 | This should be amended to expand on the special staff in the SO3 PERS and the SO2 Log cells. Note the addition of food services to the log cell 314.5.b and 316.4. The diagram should also be amended to include a financial (FIN) section under the CO SVC BN.   |
| 4-17  | Fig 4.1         | First line in column (c) under the Defence section. Insert at end of sentence: "and likely enemy strength on each."   |
| 4-23  | 409.1           | At the end of the third to last sentence add "and what strength he might deploy on each in terms of manoeuvre elements."  |
| 4-51  | 418.2.f.        | Add new sub-para f. spoiling attacks.   |
| 4-68  | 421.2.a.        | Add to the last sentence "and should be trained to deploy standing and reconnaissance patrols to meet the demands of the local security situation."   |
| 4-87  | 425.4.g.(3)     | Query. Can "line" be regarded as "non-electronic"?  |
| 4-145 | 446             | Title: Should read "Neutralization" vice "Suppression."   |
| 4-149 | 448.3.b.        | Add at the end of this sub-paragraph:<br>"Whenever helicopters are allotted, an alternate plan must be available should their use be precluded due to weather, unserviceability or enemy activity."   |

ANNEX A

- 10 -

TO 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)

DATED 27 NOV 79

| Page  | Text Ref (Para) | Comment   |
|-------|-----------------|---|
| 4-154 | 448.5.e         | Eighth line should read "LLAD" vice "LAAD".   |
| 4-187 | 459.1           | Insert new second sentence vice the present one as follows: "On the modern high intensity battlefield, where the enemy is well led, equipped, trained and motivated, it is a vital factor."   |
| 4-188 | 459.3           | Insert new second sentence "The administration plan is no less a part of his overall operational plan than is the fire plan, the obstacle plan or the movement plan."   |
| 4-189 | 459.6           | This must be revised as the service battalion does not command all brigade group combat service support resources. Neither the Field Ambulance nor the MP Platoon are part of the service battalion. (Ref - Annex D to Chapter 2).  |
| 4-189 | 459.7           | Renumber the existing paragraph 459.7 as 459.8 and amend as indicated under the next heading.<br>Insert new paragraph 459.7 as follows:<br>"Most second line combat service support in the division is located in brigade administrative areas (BAA's) within the divisional administrative area (DAA) in the divisional rear area. Administrative support deployed by the DISGP in the area of forward brigades/brigade groups will generally be sited in an area allotted by the supported brigade/brigade group administrative staff. This would be done in conjunction with the brigade/brigade group ops staff, the divisional staff and the DISGP staff. This area is called the forward brigade administrative area (Fwd BAA) and will normally contain a forward logistics group (FLG) and to provide command and control, a forward logistics control centre (FLCC). The Fwd BAA will most often be out of enemy artillery range but central and close to the unit A2 echelon locations. The FLG and FLCC are described in greater detail in CFP 312(1) - Chapter 3. |
| 4-189 | 459.8           | Insert at end of paragraph "and CFP 312(1) - The Service Battalion in Battle."  |
| 4-189 | 460.2.a         | Add new last sentence "F echelon transport therefore includes all the vehicles in F echelon."   |
| 4-190 | 460.2.b         | Insert following word vehicles in the first line "(A echelon transport)"  |
| 4-191 | 460.2.c         | Insert following the word vehicles in the first line "(B echelon transport)".   |

ANNEX A

TO 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)  
 DATED 27 NOV 79

| Page  | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|-------|-----------------|--|
| 4-194 | 461.3           | Insert new last sentence "A DP providing only one commodity is usually referred to by its nature - eg: an ammo point, a POL point or a ration point."  |
| 4-194 | 461.4           | Delete existing paragraph and insert new one as follows: "The siting of DPs is the responsibility of DISGP headquarters in consultation with the administrative and operational staffs at rear and main divisional headquarters respectively and with the units. The brigade staff must be informed and included in these consultations. DP's sited to support one or more units in a specific area are normally the responsibility of the supported unit for siting and defence."   |
| 4-194 | 461.6.a         | Delete existing paragraph and insert new one as follows: "DPs which operate once daily for a short period of time (normally at night) with fixed hours of operation."  |
| 4-194 | 461.6.b         | Delete existing paragraph and insert new one as follows: "DPs which operate on a permanent basis (ie: 24 hours) but whose daily locations may be changed every 24 hours or as necessary for security reasons."   |
| 4-195 | 461.7.a         | Delete words "Daily DPs" and insert in lieu the words "DPs which operate once daily." This occurs in lines 1 and 5.  |
| 4-195 | 461.7.b         | Delete first words "Permanent DPs" and insert, in lieu, the words "DPs which are open around the clock".<br>Delete words "Daily DP" and insert "DPs which operate once daily" in lieu. (line 2).   |
| 4-196 | 461.7.c.        | Delete existing paragraph and insert, in lieu: "On balance the DPs which are open around the clock offer advantages when there is an adverse air situation, a considerable enemy electronic warfare threat and irregular demands for combat supplies but not too much of a threat from infiltrators or enemy main forces behind the F echelons. The DPs which operate once daily will probably be better when there is a rear area security problem or when demands for combat supplies are regular, or when the DISGP transportation battalion is short of trucks or drivers. Often both types of DPs will be used - eg: a DP or DPs for ammunition (an ammo point) which is open around the clock and DPs operating once daily for other combat supplies, mail, etc...." |

| Page  | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|-------|-----------------|--|
| 4-197 | 461.9           | Delete words "permanent DP normally" in first and second line and insert word "permanently" in lieu.   |
| 4-197 | 461.9           | Add to last sentence "and keep the size and mobility of the ammunition point at an acceptable level."  |
| 4-198 | 461.11          | Delete words "permanent DP" in second line.  |
| 4-198 | 461.11          | Insert new last sentence: "During periods of heavy demand the transportation companies may establish petrol points on an around the clock basis, just as ammunition points are established during periods of high ammunition expenditures."  |
| 4-199 | 461.13          | Delete words "are permanent DP which" from the first lines and insert at the end of the sentence "or units drawn from DPs operating once daily."   |
| 4-199 | 462.1           | Delete words "or unit" in line 2 and insert "(level one maintenance)." following the word "repairs" in line 3.   |
| 4-199 | 462.1           | Insert new last sentence "Recovery activity is essential to effective battlefield clearance programs and to its support in maintaining the flow of replacement equipments."  |
| 4-200 | 462.2.          | Delete first sentence and insert in lieu "Level two land maintenance support is provided by the DISGP maintenance battalion or the brigade group service battalion maintenance company which are both second line maintenance organizations."  |
| 4-200 | 462.2           | Line 5. Replace word "site" by word "situ"   |
| 4-200 | 462.2           | Insert new last sentence "These second line maintenance organizations also possess a recovery capability which supports the units directly as well as through their role in battlefield clearance and reclamation of equipments required to keep the flow of equipment replacements moving." |
| 4-216 | 470.3.h         | Add new sub-para "Work with the administrative units to ensure the move is supported by adequate administrative resources including recovery and medical posts and perhaps POL points."  |
| 4-217 | 471.1.b         | Add to last sentence("eg: - A rifle company has less than twenty vehicles while a transportation company has more than ninety vehicles)"   |

ANNEX A

TO 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)

DATED 27 NOV 79

| Page  | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|-------|-----------------|--|
| 4-224 | 472.1.b         | Delete last sentence and insert new last sentence as follows: "The traffic control organization may and often will include recovery posts, medical posts and POL points at key locations or TCPs on the route or routes."  |
| 4-225 | 473.d.          | Delete first word "logistic" and replace it by word "administrative".  |
| 4-225 | 473.e.          | Delete word "permanent" and add to end of sentence words "operating around the clock."   |
| 5-91  | 520.1           | Insert new last sentence as follows: "The administrative staff will produce an administrative plan and administrative orders from the commanders concept of operations and ensure the distribution of timely administrative information and orders to all combat service support commanders."  |
| 5-92  | 521.4.          | Comment: This sub-para had more merit when we were equipped with Centurion tanks but is less appropriate now.  |
| 5-95  | 521.12.         | Suggestion: A brief outline of vehicle replacement procedures for Armoured Fighting Vehicles versus other vehicles might be helpful here. The existing paragraph could be interpreted as implying that forward delivery units may supply all types of vehicles.  |
| 6-87  | 621.2.          | Insert a new last sentence as follows: " A small portion of the formations combat service support resources will normally be established and maintained forward, generally in Forward Brigade Administrative Areas, to provide intimate support to the fighting troops throughout the battle."   |
| 6-132 | 640.3.          | Insert at end of second sentence "and traffic control, recovery crews, etc...."  |
| 6-138 | 645.6           | Delete existing para 6 and insert new para as follows: " <u>Repair and Recovery</u> . Repair and Recovery resources must be immediately available if equipment casualties, which occur during delay or withdrawal operations, are not to be abandoned or destroyed.<br><br>a. The axes of withdrawal must be kept clear and units not deprived of essential vehicles and their loads. The recovery of breakdowns should be directed rearwards to where repairs |

| Page  | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|-------|-----------------|--|
| 6-139 | 645.9.          | <p>or further backloading can be done. Recovery resources must be attached to the delaying force and Recovery posts should be established along the route especially at defiles.</p> <p>b. It may be necessary to set up equipment collecting points to prevent concentrations of equipment from developing and to arrange for additional recovery support from the rear to clear these points before they must be abandoned or destroyed.</p> <p>c. Before the withdrawal begins, maintenance units should, as far as possible, be cleared of work to facilitate their move."</p> <p>Insert new last sentence "The formation SOPs should include an equipment destruction policy and this should be amplified in the operation/administrative orders as necessary."</p> |



National Defence    Défense nationale

**CHIEF LAND DOCTRINE  
AND OPERATIONS**  
NOV 30 1979

Operational Research and  
Analysis Establishment  
Department of National Defence  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0K2

27 November, 1979

National Defence Headquarters  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0K2

NDRMS/SGDDN 3-3-2  
Referred to  
Transmis à..... *PA*.....

112

JAN 15 1980

Attn: DLP 4

File No  
Dossier No... *2910-CFP301-1*

Charged to/Chargé à.....

COMMENTS

CFP 301 (1) FORMATIONS IN BATTLE - FIRST DRAFT

1. Attached as Annex A is a lengthy list of comments to CFP 301 (1) First Draft.
2. Various chapters were reviewed by different personnel and no attempt has been made to correlate across the chapters.

*J. J. Conn*  
for Director Land Operational Research

ANNEX A TO  
 2910-1 (DLOR)  
 DATED 27 NOV 79

Serial No

| CHAPTER | SECTION | PARAGRAPH | SUB PARAGRAPH | LINE | REMARKS/OBSERVATIONS  |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------------|------|---|
| 1       | 3       | 114       | 2             | ①    | The provision of "protection" by employing advance guards, flank guards, rear guards etc should be mentioned.   |
|         |         |           | 3             | ②    | The sentence "The combination of firepower and movement is manoeuvre:" might be better placed in sub para 4.  |
| 2       | 2       | 205       | 2             | ③    | This para should either be expanded or dropped completely: In its present form it's a distractor.   |
|         |         | 207       | 1-2           | ④    | The provision of "protection" by employing advance guards, flank guards, rear guards, covering troops etc should be mentioned.  |
|         | 3       | 209       | 6             | ⑤    | Coordination of the corps obstacle plan and corps engineer resources should be mentioned.   |
|         |         | 212       | 2             | ⑥    | Brigade Group vice Brigade.   |
|         | 4       | 216       | 1             | ⑦    | Suggest the entire first sentence be dropped.   |
|         | ANX-D   | Page 2-D1 |               | ⑧    | Med Coy vice Med Bn.  |
| 3       | 2       | 308       | 7,8           | ⑨    | These paragraphs should be checked with D Arty's office. Reportedly, changes in meaning and useage of allotment terms are in the offing. eg At pri call will take precedence over "In DS."                      |
| 3       | 4       | 315       | 3b            | ⑩    | The control and allocation of "real estate" is an important and ongoing function at Div and BG HQ's. This is often given to the SD cell to coordinate. If not, the function should be retained by the OPS cell. |

X

X

✓

X

X

✓DLA3

X

✓

X

| CHAPTER | SECTION | PARAGRAPH | SUB PARAGRAPH | LINE      | REMARKS/OBSERVATIONS  |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------------|-----------|---|
|         |         | 317       | 4(4)          | 2<br>(11) | Amend to read "air force by provision of <u>air traffic control</u> of the low level air space of the formation." <u>Air space control</u> over the battle area remains an army matter.   |
|         | 5       | 320       | 2a            | (12)      | The control of real estate function should be added.  |
| 4       | 4       | 418       | 2,8           | (13)      | Security/protection should include provision of advance guards, flank guards, rear guards etc.  |
|         |         | 422       | 5c(2)         | 4<br>(14) | Suggest second sentence be dropped or applied only to hand held self defence wpns eg Blowpipe and Small Arms. To do otherwise artificially reduces army air defence capabilities by as much as 50%. During periods of air inferiority the aim should be to place the maximum air defence resources at wpns free status. |
|         |         |           | 6a            | (15)      | Suggest this para be checked with D Arty's office. Reportedly, AD grouping terms are <u>only</u> "under comd" or "In loc".  |
| 4       | 7       | 435       | 7c            | (16)      | Allocation vice control.  |
|         |         |           | 7             | (17)      | Creation of the AD Plan and the CB Plan should be added to this sub paragraph.  |
|         |         | 436       | 1c            | (18)      | There are better definitions available which define limits and identify what agencies can fire beyond and short of the FSCL line.   |
|         |         |           | 2b            | (19)      | ZQ vice ZO.   |
|         | 8       |           |               | (20)      | This entire section may need reworking because of pending major changes for requesting and controlling air support.   |

X  
X  
X  
X  
✓  
✓ (bold)  
X  
X  
X

| CHAPTER | SECTION | PARAGRAPH | SUB PARAGRAPH | LINE | REMARKS/OBSERVATIONS  |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------------|------|---|
|         | 9       | 450       | 6             | (21) | <p>Suggest a new sub para 6 (and relettering of remainder) which would introduce Tailored Effect Nuclear Weapons.</p> <p>"Tailored Effect Nuclear Weapons have now been developed that have a different distribution of energy from the "typical" nuclear weapon previously described. For example, an "Enhanced Radiation Weapon" produces more than 15% of its yield as nuclear radiation. As more Tailored Effect Nuclear Weapons enter service, the term "Kiloton" becomes less meaningful for describing the weapon. Although it specifies the total energy of weapon, it does not indicate the distribution of energy among the three basic nuclear weapons effects".</p> |
| 4       | 12      | 472       | 1             | (22) | <p>A heading and sub para on "Sector HQ's" should be added.</p>   |
| 5       |         |           |               | (23) | <p><u>General Pts.</u> Related to the Chapter as a whole.</p> <p>a. little or no detail given regarding attacking across an obstacle. <u>Staff Planning</u>, control measures plus flow and <del>sequence diagrams</del> should either be included in this Chapter or clearly cross referenced to other Chapters.</p>   |
|         |         |           |               | (24) | <p>b. the brief explanation of a "meeting engagement" (para 507.6) needs expansion.</p>   |

X  
X  
X

| CHAPTER     | SECTION | PARAGRAPH | SUB PARAGRAPH | LINE | REMARKS/OBSERVATIONS   |
|-------------|---------|-----------|---------------|------|--|
| 5<br>(Cont) |         |           |               | (25) | c. the constant threat of en first use or retaliory use of nuclear weapons thus forcing perpetual pre nuclear posture should be a major pt made very early in this Chapter (its first mentioned on page 80). Similarly, the implications and effects of this posture on offensive ops should be explained. |
|             |         |           |               | (26) | d. the Chapter has a number of good diagrams depicting advance, attack etc. These would be enhanced if representative scales or frontages related to metres/Kms were used.   |
| 5           | 1       | 501       | 2             | (27) | Perhaps "deliver accurate direct and indirect fire" would be better.   |
|             |         | 501       | 4,5           | (28) | No mention is made of the meeting engagement/ encounter battle.  |
|             |         | 503       | 2             | (29) | Delete "for study purposes". This is also the case in actual ops.  |
|             |         | 505       | 1             | (30) | Delete the term "tactical rules" from heading and sub para 1. These are "tactical principles" and should continue to be known as such.   |
|             |         | 505       | 4             | (31) | "must have" not "should have".   |
|             | 2       | 506       | 6a            | (32) | More emphasis should be given to exposing potential L of C problems created by bypassed enemy forces together with countermeasures needed to prevent them from occuring.   |
|             | 2       | 506       | 8             | (33) | It should be mentioned that the Covering Force may be required to overcome minor enemy resistance and to fight for information.  |

X  
X  
X  
X  
X



| CHAPTER | SECTION | PARAGRAPH | SUB PARAGRAPH | LINE | REMARKS/OBSERVATIONS  |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------------|------|---|
| 6       |         | 602       | 1             | (46) | This para sounds too much like an excuse.   |
|         |         |           | 7-10          | (47) | Should be laid out in an order that goes from smaller to larger rather than the present alphabetical method.  |
|         | 2       | 606       | 1             | (48) | Reverse sub para a and b to match diagram fig 6-1.  |
|         |         |           | 2-3           | (49) | Reverse para 2 and 3 (same reason).   |
| 7       | 3       | 614       | 4             | (50) | units vice agencies.  |
|         |         | 624       | 2             | (51) | If the main defence zone vice FEBA.   |
|         |         | 711       | 2c            | (52) | Suggest "reaffirm or adjust the priority of targets <u>or</u> aim points" would be a better wording.  |
|         |         | 711       | 2e            | (53) | warheads vice weapons.  |
|         |         | 714       | 2             | (54) | Nuc Warnings <u>must</u> go over Comd Nets even at bde/unit level. This is a Comd responsibility that cannot be delegated. Arty nets are needed to pass data and control the firing of the nuc package.                             |
|         |         | 715       | 2c            | (55) | This is just one option. Perhaps more than one gun is needed. It may even be necessary to use all guns to fire the package and as a worst case it may be necessary to do some firings from existing conventional battery positions. |
|         |         | 717       | 3             | (56) | Delete NBC staffs. This is a pure artillery function.   |
|         |         | 717       | 5a(3)         | (57) | Delete NBC staff insert Artillery Staff. Again, a pure artillery function. Change title to read "A Collateral Damage Distance (CDD) Overlay". (US have switched to this).   |

✓  
 X  
 ✓  
 ✓  
 ✓  
 ✓  
 X  
 ✓  
 No change reqd.  
 X  
 X  
 X

| CHAPTER | SECTION | PARAGRAPH | SUB PARAGRAPH | LINE | REMARKS/OBSERVATIONS   |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------------|------|--|
| 7       |         |           | 5d            | (38) | Heading should now read "The Collateral Damage Distance Overlay". A full explanation of this is included in CLFCSC precis Nuc/4/P issued for Courses 7901 or 02. |
| 8       | 2       | 802       |               | (59) | Is there not a NATO agreed term to replace FIBUA eg MOBUA or MOIUT?  |
|         |         | 802       | 2c            | (60) | A recent European terrain analysis showed an average of 25 cities, towns, villages per defending brigade area.   |
|         |         | 802       | 3             | 6    | Suggest new sentence be inserted.  |
|         |         |           |               | (61) | "However, at times, they are in themselves obstacles due to embankments, cuts, cloverleafs etc".   |
|         |         | 802       | 5             |      | Suggest new sub para j.  |
|         |         |           |               | (62) | "ease of creating virtually impassable (to veh) rubble obstacles either deliberately or inadvertently".  |
|         |         | 802       | 7             |      | Suggest the following be added to the end of paragraph   |
|         |         |           |               | (63) | "thus placing reliance on independent action."   |
|         |         | 802       | 8a            | (64) | conventional vice normal   |
|         |         |           | 8b(1)         |      | Suggest the following be added to end of sub paragraph   |
|         |         |           |               | (65) | "However, masks and clothing will defeat the chemical attack."   |

X  
 X  
 X  
 ✓  
 X  
 X  
 ✓





| CHAPTER | SECTION | PARAGRAPH | SUB PARAGRAPH | LINE | REMARKS/OBSERVATIONS   |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------------|------|--|
| 8       |         |           | 7b            | (92) | Delete all after (;). This should not happen if the lanes have been proved and properly marked.  |
|         |         | 813       | 8b            | (93) | 2 After lane insert (about 90% clearance).   |
|         |         |           | 8d            | (94) | 2 and "bangalor torpedoes, snakes and vipers".   |
|         |         |           | 10h           | (95) | Should be listed early in the sequence.  |
|         |         |           | 11            | (96) | Add (7) Engineer deductions  |
|         |         | 814       | 1             | (97) | Many minor natural and artificial obstacles that are not necessarily an obstacle to the traversing or close in bypass by dismounted infantry, will be encountered in the advance by the covering force and vanguard elements. Minor natural obstacles include rough ground, marshy ground, steep slopes, woods, streams as well as man made devices such as drainage ditches, RR and rough embankments, hedgerows and fences and buildings. Minor artificial obstacles refer to crater groups, rubble, abatis, nuisance and point scattered minefields, small bridge and culvert demolition. The majority of minor natural gap type and some minor artificial obstacles are less than 22 metres wide and can be bridged with armoured vehicle launched bridges held by divisional or brigade engineer units. Others may be cleared or bypassed using specialized equipment such as bulldozers and/or combat engineer tractors. |
|         |         | 814       | 4             | (98) | 3 relatively fast vice quick.  |

OX  
 7  
 No X

X

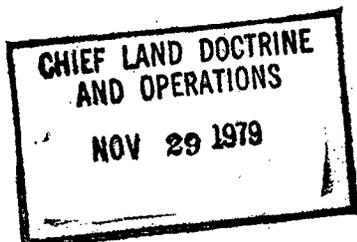
X



| CHAPTER | SECTION | PARAGRAPH | SUB PARAGRAPH | LINE | REMARKS/OBSERVATIONS   |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------------|------|--|
|         | 4       | 817       | 5c (110)      | 3    | based on unit movement staff tables and air movement tables. |
|         |         |           | 5e (111)      |      | insert new (1) Priority of order of arrival.                 |
|         |         |           | 6c (11R)      | 12   | After movement insert (power lines etc).                     |

✓  
 ✓  
 X

MEMORANDUM



2910 CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)

27 Nov 79

142

DLP

CFP 301(1) - FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FIRST DRAFT

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) DLP 4 5 Oct 79

1. As requested, Annex A to this memo provides comments.

*for* *R. B. Screenshot*  
R. B. Screenshot  
BGen  
DGLEM  
2-2886

Attacment: Annex A

| Page | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|------|-----------------|--|
| 1-1  | 102.1 (1)       | Insert "tough, well trained and mechanized" vice "sophisticated". ✓  |
| 1-2  | 103.1 (2)       | Insert "of its administrative" vice "its logistic". ✗  |
| 1-2b | 106-1 (3)       | Insert "a variety of well developed industries" vice "sophisticated".<br>Insert word "airfields" following word "railways" and word "mountains" after word "lakes". ✗  |
| 1-3  | 106.2 (4)       | Insert word "often" after word "ground" in third sentence. ✗<br>Delete all after word "forces" in third sentence as Fire and Movement is basic in all types of terrain. ✓  |
| 1-8  | 106.9a (5)      | Insert words "if undefended" after word "may" in first sentence and end sentences after word "lowlands". ○   |
|      | (6)             | Insert new second sentence "However, if cleverly exploited they can produce many critical....." ○  |
| 1-8  | 106 (7)         | Should be renumbered 107 as para 106 starts on Page 1-2a. Subsequent changes must be made to following paras and index. Note it corrects itself by para 113 as no paras 111 or 112 are listed. Para 112 would occur at Section 3 of Page 1-17. ✓ |
| 1-9  | 106.7 (8)       | Start para with "Without good leadership and discipline long periods ....." ✗  |
| 1-16 | 110.2 (9)       | Insert "administrative" vice "logistic" in first sentence. ✗   |
| 1-18 | 3 (10)          | Insert "areas where movement is restricted by terrain or urbanization" vice "built-up areas" in the first sentence. ✗<br>Insert "plans, orders, drills" before word "communications". ✓  |
| 1-19 | 111.7 (11)      | Insert "well led" before "highly motivated" in second sentence. ✗<br>Delete "the delay" in the fourth sentence as this is part of the defence or the withdrawal. ✗   |

| Page | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|------|-----------------|--|
| 1-20 | 113.1 (12)      | Insert "Combat Power" vice "some other form" in fourth sentence. Insert "superiority" vice "superior combat power", word "from" following word "derived" and delete the word "the" prior to the word "skills" in the fifth sentence. X |
| 1-21 | 113.2 (13)      | Insert the words "at least" prior to the word "two" in the sixth sentence. ✓   |
| 1-22 | 113.3 (14)      | Insert word "training" prior to word "discipline" in first sentence. X   |
| 1-23 | 113.6 (15)      | Add to the last sentence "or even something as basic as an absence of any aircraft in the battle area caused by adverse weather conditions". ✓   |
| 1-24 | 114.1 (16)      | Add to the second to last sentence "and thus defeat him". X  |
| 1-25 | 114.4 (17)      | Comment re last sentence. Suggest that effective command and control enhances both stability and balance while movement may inhibit one or both. X   |
| 1-27 | 115.2.(3) (18)  | Insert word "administrative support" vice "logistic support and maintenance". X  |
| 1-29 | 115.4 (19)      | The first sentence should include effective leadership, command and control as necessary to a successful execution at ground level. X  |
| 2-2  | 202.1 (20)      | Suggest erm "administrative support" vice "maintenance" in first sentence. ✓ DMERS   |
| 2-4  | 206.1 (21)      | Insert "administratively supporting" vice "administering and maintaining" in the first sentence. ✓   |
| 2-4  | 2-6.1 (22)      | Insert "repair, recovery, transport, medical services" following the word "stores". ✓  |
| 2-5  | 207.2 (23)      | Insert "unit structures which permit dispersion while retaining the ability to concentrate and organic to the formation" vice word "organic" in the first sentence. X  |
| 2-6  | 208.3 (24)      | Insert "command functions" vice "decision making". X   |

| Page | Text Ref (Para)    | Comment   |
|------|--------------------|---|
| 2-10 | 210.1.b(6) (25)    | Should read "the divisional service group" to be consistent with terminology in para 218. ✓   |
| 2-10 | 210.1.c. (26)      | If the division contains 3 brigades then page 2-2 para 201.3.c. should be amended accordingly. X  |
| 2-11 | 212.2 (27)         | Insert "brigade group" vice "brigade". ✓  |
| 2-14 | 216.1.h. (28)      | Query. Can they control and administer up to five brigades without augmentation? X  |
| 2-15 | 216.2.b. (29)      | Insert "administrative" vice "logistics". X   |
| 2-31 | 217.20.b (30)      | Insert "Signals Squadron signals equipment" vice "signals equipment" and "when required" following the word "assistance". Note that the supporting maintenance organizations and personnel also have responsibilities for technical advice. |
| 2-31 | 217.23.c(3) (31)   | Delete word "arms" in sixth line as this would exclude the signals, engineer and aviation units etc. ✓  |
| 2-45 | 218.1.c. (32)      | Insert "as well as providing additional combat service support" vice "who provide additional combat service support" in the first sentence. ✓   |
| 2-46 | 218.1.c (33)       | Insert "combat service support" vice "combat support". ✓  |
| 2-48 | 218.2.b.(4) (34)   | Insert "less cryptographic equipment" following word "equipment". ✓   |
| 2-51 | 218.6.a.(1) (35)   | Insert "land technical equipment less aircraft and cryptographic equipment" vice "equipment less aircraft". ✓   |
| 2-52 | 218.6.a(8) (36)    | Insert new sub-sub-para "arrange the back loading of salvage". ✓  |
| 2-52 | 218.6.b(3) (37)    | Insert "land technical equipment less aircraft and cryptographic equipment particularly to the equipments" vice entire line four of that sub-para. ✓  |
| 2-53 | 218.6.b(3)(c) (38) | Insert "within the division" at the end of the sentence. ✓  |
| 2-55 | 218.6.c. (39)      | Subsections are numbered incorrectly.   |

| Page           | Text Ref (Para)          | Comment  |
|----------------|--------------------------|--|
| 2-55           | 218.6.c(2) (40)          | Line 8. Insert "(less cryptographic maintenance)" following word "maintenance".  |
|                | (41)                     | Insert unnumbered sub-para at top of 2-56 as sub-sub para (b) and delete both sup-paras (1) and (2) on the lower part of page 2-55. (They are redundant and confusing).                      |
| 2-56           | 218.6.c(2) (42)          | Delete first three lines at top of this page. (Redundant).   |
| 2-63           | 219.4.a (43)             | Why is this the "Corps Support Command" vice "Corps Service Command". At the divisional level it is "Divisional Service Group" not Divisional Support Group. The terms should be consistent. |
| 2-63           | 219.4.a.(2).and (3) (44) | The term "divisional support group" is used here but "divisional service group" was used throughout para 218. The designation should be consistent and should read "service" vice "support". |
| 2-63           | 219.4 (45)               | Paragraph numbering 4. is wrong. ✓   |
| 2-63           | 219.4.a.(1) (46)         | Insert word "administration" vice word "maintenance". ✓  |
| 2-63           | 219.4 (47)               | Seven lines from bottom. Should read "Corps Service Command".  |
|                | (48)                     | Six lines from bottom. Should read "supply group" vice "support group".  |
| 2-64           | 219.4.c (49)             | Should read "maintenance group" vice "supply group" in line one. ✓   |
| 2-64           | 219.4.c.(1) (50)         | Should read "additional recovery support" vice "additional recovery vehicles." ✓   |
| 2-64           | 219.4.c.(4) (51)         | Add new sub-para "assistance with repair services for vehicles, weapons, radio and land technical equipment and with backloading of salvage." ?  |
| 2-A1 thru 2-E1 | (52)                     | Presumably these organization charts are subject to change and will be based, in the final analysis, on the Combat Development Process. X  |
| 3-1            | 301 (53)                 | Second to last sentence. Insert "good training, well developed SOPs" following the word "communications". ✓  |
| 3-1            | 302.1 (54)               | Second sentence. Insert "superior professional knowledge, integrity" vice "he must have". X  |

| Page | Text Ref (Para)    | Comment   |
|------|--------------------|---|
| 3-2  | 302.5 (55)         | Insert at end of paragraph "The need for the commander to recognize valour and superior service is also required. He must devote the same sort of attention to honours and awards as he does to discipline."  |
| 3-5  | 304.2 (56)         | Insert at end of paragraph "Training and exercises must constantly foster the disciplined initiative of subordinate commanders at all levels for results of the commanders concept of operations to achieve its maximum portential."  |
| 3-7  | 307.1 (57)         | Insert word "officer" after word "staff" in the second to last line.  |
| 3-11 | 308.9 (58)         | Insert "(excluding artillery)" following the word "communications" in line four.  |
| 3-11 | 308-9.a (59)       | Insert "Artillery may also be allotted "In Support" for a particular mission or period of time" at the end of this paragraph.   |
| 3-15 | 309.3.c(1) (60)    | Insert "rations" vice "supplies" in the first sentence.   |
| 3-15 | 309.3.e(2)(a) (61) | Insert "accommodation space similar to that for their own troops" vice "accommodation". Note normally troops assigned under this relationship should arrive self-contained insofar as tentage is concerned.   |
| 3-19 | 312.2.b (62)       | <p>This must be redefined. The special staff provides the commander with the more specialized technical and professional expertise he requires. Within the Administrative Branches the special staff will include those personnel responsible for the personnel, transportation, supply, maintenance (land), maintenance (air) and food services disciplines. Theirs is the primary responsibility for provision of appropriate advice to the commander through the chain of command in their respective disciplines. It should also be noted that the DISGP commander or alternately the Service Battalion CO is a combat service support advisor (not staff) to the commander and his staff for those same functions as may be required or necessary.</p> <p>The combat service support advisors are <u>NOT</u> special staff and must be distinguished from the staff.</p> |

ANNEX A

TO 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)  
 DATED 27 NOV 79

| Page | Text Ref (Para)   | Comment  |
|------|---|--|
| 3-19 | 312.2.b (Cont'd.)   | The existing para should be deleted and be replaced by the following new para " <u>Special Staff</u> . This staff provides the commander with the more specialized technical and professional expertise that he requires. They do have advisory responsibilities but do not have any command responsibilities, and they work through the normal chain of command. This staff has authority to liaise to the next higher and lower levels within their respective disciplines. (eg: the service support staff officers in the logistics cell).  |
| 3-20 | 312.2.d. <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">63</span> | In conjunction with the new para 312.2.b. there should be a new para 312.2.d as follows:<br><br>"Advisors. In addition to the various types of staff the formation commander has at his disposal, he also has a number of combat support and combat service support advisors. These advisors command their own units (excluding the Chaplains) and while they do have the right of direct access to the commander, they normally work through, in the case of the combat support advisors, the DCOS Ops (SSO Ops/SO2 Ops) or in the case of the combat service support advisors, the DCOS Adm (SSO Adm/SO2 Adm). |
| 3-20 | 313.1.a. <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">64</span> | Insert at beginning "assisting the commander in planning and" ✓  |
| 3-21 | 313.2.a. <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">65</span> | Insert at beginning "assisting the commander in". ✓  |
| 3-22 | 313.2.g. <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">66</span> | Insert "administrative" vice "logistic" ✗  |
| 3.22 | 313.2.h. <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">67</span> | The wording "in close support" is confusing. If this means in the A2 echelon area or forward of the BAA it should be specific. Within the BAA the Service Battalion does this function. ✗  |
| 3-22 | 314.2 <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">68</span>    | Delete existing second sentence and insert a new second sentence as follows: "The headquarters includes a number of special staff, some advisors and a small personal staff." ✓  |
| 3-23 | 314.5.a <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">69</span>  | Delete existing sub-para and insert new sub-para as follows:<br><br>"Personnel which consists of the special staff-personnel and is subdivided into a personnel (PERS) and a personnel services (PER SVCS) cell; and"  |
| 3-23 | 314.5.b <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">70</span>  | Delete existing sub-para and insert new sub-para as follows:   |

| Page | Text Ref (Para)   | Comment   |
|------|-------------------|---|
| 3-23 | 314.5.b (Cont'd)  | "Logistics which consists of the special staff - logistics and is subdivided into transportation (TN), land maintenance (Maint L), air maintenance (Maint A), supply (Sup) and food services (F Svcs) cells." Note the addition of the food services officer.   |
| 3-24 | 314.6.b (71)      | Delete existing last two sentences and insert the following in lieu: "When a task force is formed, the combat service support advisors continue to retain direct access to the commander but normally work through the Deputy Chief of Staff Administration (DCOS Adm). In a division the relationship is similar and they would normally report through the Commander DISGP and the DCOS Adm." |
| 3-24 | 315.1 (72)        | Insert word "advice" after word "information" in the second sentence. ✓   |
| 3-26 | 315.3.a.(13) (73) | Insert new sub-para "control of scarce or controlled resources including supplies and reinforcements." ✗  |
| 3-26 | 315.3.b.(6) (74)  | Insert new sub-para "control of real estate in conjunction with the operations cell (para 315.3.a(20))" ✗   |
| 3-28 | 316.1.f (75)      | Insert "personnel" vice "administrative." ✗   |
| 3-31 | 316.4 (76)        | This section should include the food services cell in the heading and should contain a food services sub-section. ✓   |
| 3.32 | 316.4.b.(3) (77)  | Insert "monitoring" vice "supervising" ✗  |
| 3.33 | 316.4.b.(8) (78)  | Delete - this is a function that belongs in the DISGP. Insert instead a new sub-para (8) as follows:<br>"Liaison with maintenance staffs and personnel at higher and lower formations." ✓   |
| 3-33 | 316.4.c.(1) (79)  | Insert at beginning "policy on" as provision is not a staff function. ✓   |
| 3-33 | 316.4.c.(4) (80)  | Insert at beginning "In conjunction with maintenance staff establish policy." ✓   |
| 3-37 | 318.1 (81)        | Delete existing paragraph and insert a new one as follows:<br>"Combat service support advisors who also command their own units, work closely in conjunction with the Administrative Branch (and its special staff) and normally receive their administrative orders and introductions from DCOS Adm." ✓  |

| Page | Text Ref (Para)         | Comment  |
|------|-------------------------|--|
| 3-37 | 318.2<br><br>(82)       | Delete existing paragraph and insert a new one as follows:<br>"They are responsible, within their function, for providing the commander and his staff with advice as requested or as they deem necessary. They retain the right of direct access to the commander on matters within their purview."  |
| 3-37 | 318-3<br><br>(83)       | Delete existing first line and insert in lieu:<br>"The formation headquarters is responsible for the promulgation of orders and the provision of direction. In technical matters the special staff of the formation work in close consultation with the combat service support advisors to do this. In conjunction with the divisional staff the combat service support advisors have a responsibility for the provision of general direction, supervision, control and liaison as follows." |
| 3-41 | 320.4.c<br><br>(84)     | Insert word "administrative" prior to word "movement" as operational movement orders are an operations staff function.   |
| 3-41 | 320.4.e<br><br>(85)     | Insert words "personnel" and "prior" to the word logistics.  |
| 3-43 | 320.4.q<br><br>(86)     | Insert new sub-para q "liaison with administrative staffs and personnel at higher and lower formations."   |
| 3-43 | 320.6<br><br>(87)       | Delete the last sentence and insert in lieu:<br>"The SO2/SSO Adm prepares the administrative plan utilizing the advice of his own staff and the combat service support advisors. The combat service support (advisors) commanders execute the plans."  |
| 3-43 | 321.1<br><br>(88)       | Delete first two words "Special staff" and insert in lieu "Advisors".  |
| 3-44 | 321.2<br><br>(89)       | Insert "excluding chaplains" following the second word, "officers."  |
| 3-45 | 321.4<br><br>(90)       | Insert a new sentence at the end of the paragraph as follows: "It should be noted that combat service support expertise and advice is available within the administrative branch itself and this source should be exploited first."  |
| 3-47 | 323.1.a.(7)<br><br>(91) | Insert "The Division Military Police Officer." He should be part of the Operations Staff.  |

ANNEX A

TO 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)  
 DATED 27 NOV 79

| Page  | Text Ref (Para)   | Comment   |
|-------|---|---|
| 3-47  | 323.1.b.(3) <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">92</span>  | Delete "The Division Military Police Officer". Note this is consistent with the split at the Bde/Bde Gp level. <span style="float: right;">X</span>   |
| 3-49  | 324.4(h) <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">93</span>     | Insert new sub-para "the step up group." <span style="float: right;">✓</span>   |
| 3-51  | 327.1.(s) <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">94</span>    | Delete "the logistics operations centre" and insert "the administrative cell." <span style="float: right;">X</span>   |
| 3-62  | 332.1. <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">95</span>       | Insert word "coordination" after word "cooperation". <span style="float: right;">✓</span>   |
| 3-A1  | <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">96</span>              | This should be amended in accordance with para 314.5.b and 316.4 (food services). It should also be noted that since they are shown here, there should be some mention of the financial and postal functions and their relationships (staff/advisors) in the text. If they are only found within the DISGP divisional service battalion they could be deleted from their chart. |
| 3-B1  | <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">97</span>              | This should be amended to expand on the special staff in the SO3 PERS and the SO2 Log cells. Note the addition of food services to the log cell 314.5.b and 316.4. The diagram should also be amended to include a financial (FIN) section under the CO SVC BN.   |
| 4-17  | Fig 4.1 <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">98</span>      | First line in column (c) under the Defence section. Insert at end of sentence: "and likely enemy strength on each." <span style="float: right;">X</span>  |
| 4-23  | 409.1 <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">99</span>        | At the end of the third to last sentence add "and what strength he might deploy on each in terms of manoeuvre elements." <span style="float: right;">X</span>   |
| 4-51  | 418.2.f. <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">100</span>    | Add new sub-para f. spoiling attacks. <span style="float: right;">X</span>  |
| 4-68  | 421.2.a. <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">101</span>    | Add to the last sentence "and should be trained to deploy standing and reconnaissance patrols to meet the demands of the local security situation." <span style="float: right;">X</span>  |
| 4-87  | 425.4.g.(3) <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">102</span> | Query. Can "line" be regarded as "non-electronic"? <span style="float: right;">X</span>   |
| 4-145 | 446 <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">103</span>         | Title: Should read "Neutralization" vice "Suppression." <span style="float: right;">X</span>  |
| 4-149 | <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">104</span>             | Add at the end of this sub-paragraph:<br>"Whenever helicopters are allotted, an alternate plan must be available should their use be precluded due to weather, unserviceability or enemy activity."<br>Reflect in 3a. <span style="float: right;">X</span>  |

ANNEX A

TO 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)

DATED 27 NOV 79

| Page  | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|-------|-----------------|--|
| 4-154 | 448.5.e (105)   | Eighth line should read "LLAD" vice "LAAD". ✓  |
| 4-187 | 459.1 (106)     | Insert new second sentence vice the present one as follows: "On the modern high intensity battlefield, where the enemy is well led, equipped, trained and motivated, it is a vital factor." ✗  |
| 4-188 | 459.3 (107)     | Insert new second sentence "The administration plan is no less a part of his overall operational plan than is the fire plan, the obstacle plan or the movement plan." ✓  |
| 4-189 | 459.6 (108)     | This must be revised as the service battalion does not command all brigade group combat service support resources. Neither the Field Ambulance nor the MP Platoon are part of the service battalion. (Ref - Annex D to Chapter 2). ✓   |
| 4-189 | 459.7 (109)     | Renumber the existing paragraph 459.7 as 459.8 and amend as indicated under the next heading. Insert new paragraph 459.7 as follows: "Most second line combat service support in the division is located in brigade administrative areas (BAA's) within the divisional administrative area (DAA) in the divisional rear area. Administrative support deployed by the DISGP in the area of forward brigades/brigade groups will generally be sited in an area allotted by the supported brigade/brigade group administrative staff. This would be done in conjunction with the brigade/brigade group ops staff, the divisional staff and the DISGP staff. This area is called the forward brigade administrative area (Fwd BAA) and will normally contain a forward logistics group (FLG) and to provide command and control, a forward logistics control centre (FLCC). The Fwd BAA will most often be out of enemy artillery range but central and close to the unit A2 echelon locations. The FLG and FLCC are described in greater detail in CFP 312(1) - Chapter 3." ✓ |
| 4-189 | 459.8 (110)     | Insert at end of paragraph "and CFP 312(1) - The Service Battalion in Battle." ✓   |
| 4-189 | 460.2.a (111)   | Add new last sentence "F echelon transport therefore includes all the vehicles in F echelon." ✗  |
| 4-190 | 460.2.b (112)   | Insert following word vehicles in the first line "(A echelon transport)" ✗   |
| 4-191 | 460.2.c (113)   | Insert following the word vehicles in the first line "(B echelon transport)". ✗  |

ANNEX A

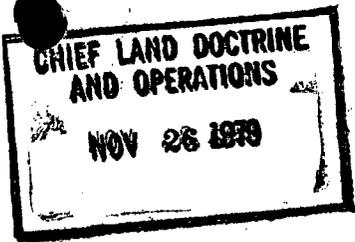
TO 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES 2-4)  
 DATED 27 NOV 79

| Page  | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|-------|-----------------|--|
| 4-194 | 461.3 (114)     | Insert new last sentence "A DP providing only one commodity is usually referred to by its nature - eg: an ammo point, a POL point or a ration point." ✓  |
| 4-194 | 461.4 (115)     | Delete existing paragraph and insert new one as follows: "The siting of DPs is the responsibility of DISGP headquarters in consultation with the administrative and operational staffs at rear and main divisional headquarters respectively and with the units. The brigade staff must be informed and included in these consultations. DP's sited to support one or more units in a specific area are normally the responsibility of the supported unit for siting and defence."   |
| 4-194 | 461.6.a (116)   | Delete existing paragraph and insert new one as follows: "DPs which operate once daily for a short period of time (normally at night) with fixed hours of operation."  |
| 4-194 | 461.6.b (117)   | Delete existing paragraph and insert new one as follows: "DPs which operate on a permanent basis (ie: 24 hours) but whose daily locations may be changed every 24 hours or as necessary for security reasons."   |
| 4-195 | 461.7.a (118)   | Delete words "Daily DPs" and insert in lieu the words "DPs which operate once daily." This occurs in lines 1 and 5.  |
| 4-195 | 461.7.b (119)   | Delete first words "Permanent DPs" and insert, in lieu, the words "DPs which are open around the clock".<br>Delete words "Daily DP" and insert "DPs which operate once daily" in lieu. (line 2).   |
| 4-196 | 461.7.c. (120)  | Delete existing paragraph and insert, in lieu: "On balance the DPs which are open around the clock offer advantages when there is an adverse air situation, a considerable enemy electronic warfare threat and irregular demands for combat supplies but not too much of a threat from infiltrators or enemy main forces behind the F echelons. The DPs which operate once daily will probably be better when there is a rear area security problem or when demands for combat supplies are regular, or when the DISGP transportation battalion is short of trucks or drivers. Often both types of DPs will be used - eg: a DP or DPs for ammunition (an ammo point) which is open around the clock and DPs operating once daily for other combat supplies, mail, etc...." |

| Page  | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|-------|-----------------|--|
| 4-197 | 461.9 (121)     | Delete words "permanent DP normally" in first and second line and insert word "permanently" in lieu. ✓   |
| 4-197 | 461.9 (122)     | Add to last sentence "and keep the size and mobility of the ammunition point at an acceptable level." ✓  |
| 4-198 | 461.11 (123)    | Delete words "permanent DP" in second line. ✓  |
| 4-198 | 461.11 (124)    | Insert new last sentence: "During periods of heavy demand the transportation companies may establish petrol points on an around the clock basis, just as ammunition points are established during periods of high ammunition expenditures." ✓  |
| 4-199 | 461.13 (125)    | Delete words "are permanent DP which" from the first lines and insert at the end of the sentence "or units drawn from DPs operating once daily." ✓   |
| 4-199 | 462.1 (126)     | Delete words "or unit" in line 2 and insert "(level one maintenance)." following the word "repairs" in line 3. ✓   |
| 4-199 | 462.1 (127)     | Insert new last sentence "Recovery activity is essential to effective battlefield clearance programs and to its support in maintaining the flow of replacement equipments." ✓  |
| 4-200 | 462.2. (128)    | Delete first sentence and insert in lieu "Level two land maintenance support is provided by the DISGP maintenance battalion or the brigade group service battalion maintenance company which are both second line maintenance organizations." ✓  |
| 4-200 | 462.2 (129)     | Line 5. Replace word "site" by word "situ" ✓   |
| 4-200 | 462.2 (130)     | Insert new last sentence "These second line maintenance organizations also possess a recovery capability which supports the units directly as well as through their role in battlefield clearance and reclamation of equipments required to keep the flow of equipment replacements moving." ✓ |
| 4-216 | 470.3.h (131)   | Add new sub-para "Work with the administrative units to ensure the move is supported by adequate administrative resources including recovery and medical posts and perhaps POL points." ✓  |
| 4-217 | 471.1.b (132)   | Add to last sentence ("eg: - A rifle company has less than twenty vehicles while a transportation company has more than ninety vehicles)" X  |

| Page  | Text Ref (Para)  | Comment   |
|-------|------------------|---|
| 4-224 | 472.1.b<br>(133) | Delete last sentence and insert new last sentence as follows: "The traffic control organization may and often will include recovery posts, medical posts and POL points at key locations or TCPs on the route or routes." X   |
| 4-225 | 473.d.<br>(134)  | Delete first word "logistic" and replace it by word "administrative". ✓   |
| 4-225 | 473.e.<br>(135)  | Delete word "permanent" and add to end of sentence words "operating around the clock." ✓  |
| 5-91  | 520.1<br>(136)   | Insert new last sentence as follows: "The administrative staff will produce an administrative plan and administrative orders from the commanders concept of operations and ensure the distribution of timely administrative information and orders to all combat service support commanders."   |
| 5-92  | 521.4.<br>(137)  | Comment: This sub-para had more merit when we were equipped with Centurion tanks but is less appropriate now. X   |
| 5-95  | 521.12.<br>(138) | Suggestion: A brief outline of vehicle replacement procedures for Armoured Fighting Vehicles versus other vehicles might be helpful here. The existing paragraph could be interpreted as implying that forward delivery units may supply all types of vehicles. X   |
| 6-87  | 621.2.<br>(139)  | Insert a new last sentence as follows: " A small portion of the formations combat service support resources will normally be established and maintained forward, generally in Forward Brigade Administrative Areas, to provide intimate support to the fighting troops throughout the battle."  |
| 6-132 | 640.3.<br>(140)  | Insert at end of second sentence "and traffic control, recovery crews, etc...." ✓   |
| 6-138 | 645.6<br>(141)   | Delete existing para 6 and insert new parab as follows: " <u>Repair and Recovery</u> . Repair and Recovery resources must be immediately available if equipment casualties, which occur during delay or withdrawal operations, are not to be abandoned or destroyed.<br><br>a. The axes of withdrawal must be kept clear and units not deprived of essential vehicles and their loads. The recovery of breakdowns should be directed rearwards to where repairs |

| Page  | Text Ref (Para) | Comment  |
|-------|-----------------|--|
| 6-139 | 645.9. (142)    | <p>or further backloading can be done. Recovery resources must be attached to the delaying force and Recovery posts should be established along the route especially at defiles.</p> <p>b. It may be necessary to set up equipment collecting points to prevent concentrations of equipment from developing and to arrange for additional recovery support from the rear to clear these points before they must be abandoned or destroyed.</p> <p>c. Before the withdrawal begins, maintenance units should, as far as possible, be cleared of work to facilitate their move."</p> <p>Insert new last sentence "The formation SOPs should include an equipment destruction policy and this should be amplified in the operation/administrative orders as necessary."</p> |



MEMORANDUM

2911-CFP 301-1 (D Log Ops)

23 Nov 79

DLP 4

CFP 301(1) - FORMATIONS IN BATTLE - FIRST DRAFT

1. The subject draft has been reviewed and two areas of particular interest to this directorate require comment. The first area is the specific treatment of combat service support at Section 4 of Chapter 2. This section reflects the U.S. doctrine being taught at the Staff College in Toronto and will be confirmed or changed as a result of the combat development now under way. Comment on this specific section will be withheld until after the deliberations of the Combat Development Committee presently scheduled for April, 1980.

(1)

X

2. The second area of interest is much more general in nature and concerns topics dealt with throughout the draft. These topics are considered in the following paragraphs.

3. The aim of the publication at Art 101 refers to "operations of war" and in the scope at Art 102, this aim is narrowed significantly to "high intensity operations --- in a European environment". The remainder of the publication is concerned mainly with operations in Western Europe. This Directorate has some reservations concerning the lack of attention given to Canadian commitments in Norway and subsequently the methods of providing combat service support in that area.

(2)

X

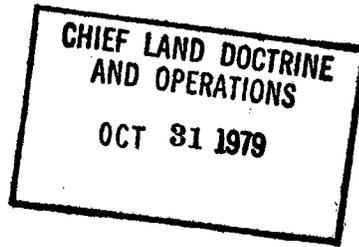
4. Article 218, para 1b. refers to the service battalion within a brigade group as "a relatively inflexible system" that "does not make the best use of scarce resources". It may be that the author intended to make this statement in regard to the provision of CSS resources at division level, however, to apply it to brigade level is definitely wrong. The service battalion, by centralizing control of scarce resources enhances the allocation of those resources and provides the maximum possible flexibility. The last sentence of Art 218.1.b should be removed. As previously stated in paragraph 1 of this memorandum, the remainder of Article 218 should await the results of the CDC meeting in April 1980.

(3)

✓

C.S. Read  
Col  
D Log Ops  
6-0551

MEMORANDUM



2900-CFP 301-1  
~~2000-43~~ (DGIS OP&T)

SR

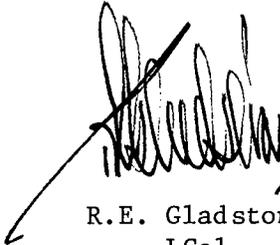
30 Oct 79

DLP

COMMENTS - CFP 301(1) FIRST DRAFT  
FORMATIONS IN BATTLE.

Ref: A. 2910-CFP301(1) (DLP 4) 5 Oct 79

1. Attached are DGIS comments on the subject document.
2. It will be noted that three basic themes are contained in these comments. They are:
  - a. The necessity of having intelligence specialists (CI, Interrogation, PSYOPS, etc) available to any level formation must be recognized. Brigade Groups and Task Forces must have them on establishment or permanently attached when higher formations do not exist.
  - b. The EW function is as much an intelligence function as it is an operational one. It is certainly not a signal function or even a matter of signal interest except to provide the normal signal support given to any unit.
  - c. The Military Police role is equally responsive to the operations function as the administrative/logistical one. As such, a military police advisor must be immediately available to the operations branch at any level.
3. For action as required.



R.E. Gladstone  
LCol  
DGIS OP&T  
6-3617

Enclosure: 1

DGIS COMMENTS - CFP 301(1) FIRST DRAFT

| SERIAL | REF             | OBSN  | CHANGE RECOMMENDATION                                 | REMARKS   |
|--------|-----------------|---|---|---|
| (a)    | (b)             | (c)   | (d)   | (e)   |
| 1      | Art 211         | An Int PL has not been shown. Such a PL is needed based on the same rationale as Div.                                 | Add a composite PL of Cbt Int and Fd Secur (CI) pers. |   |
| 2      | Art 217 para 19 | EW Sqn shouldn't be organic to HQ & Sig Regt. It is self contained unit responsible to Ops and Int staffs.            | Add Indep EW Unit                                     | Str approx 300<br>Deployment unique   |
| 3      | Art 217 para 23 | Int requires dedicated comms as a std feature. Must be net comms - Trunk is too slow and is interrupted during moves. | Identify in para                                      |   |
| 4      | Art 218 para 9  | Fd Secur is CI function as indicated in Art 217 para 27 and elsewhere.  | Delete para 9b(4)                                     |   |
| 5      | Art 218 para 2c | The MP Coy is not listed.   | Add MP Coy  | Placement of the MP Coy in the DIV SVCS GP appears inconsistent with the rationale supporting an Indep MP unit at Bde Gp. |

| SERIAL | REF                   | OBSN  | CHANGE RECOMMENDATION  | REMARKS  |
|--------|-----------------------|---|--|--|
| (a)    | (b)                   | (c)   | (d)  | (e)  |
| 6      | Art 217<br>para 27    | The Int Pl is not seen as a small unit. It must be capable of detaching Fd Secur, Interrogation Teams to Bdes under Commd   | Delete "small" in line one. Add sentence re dets to bdes.  |  |
| 7      | Art 219<br>para 3e    | A. The placement of all int specialists in Corps means none are available before this fmn is formed. See Serial 6 above;<br>B. "Counter Sabotage" should read "Counter Intelligence". | A, A statement is required that Bde G.p/ Task Force and Div will have CI/Interro specialists organic which can be centralized when a higher fmn is formed.<br>B. Delete "Sabotage", insert "Intelligence". |  |
| 8      | Art 219<br>para 5     | PSYOPS Specialists are in same case as others (see Serial 7)  | As in Serial 7   |  |
| 9      | Art 314<br>para 6a    | See serial 2. EW Sqn Comd should be listed separately. As indicated in Art 418, para 6, he is the Advisor.  | Insert EW Sqn Comd.  |  |
| 10     | Art 315<br>para 3a    | Offensive Deception Implementation is best directed by Int Staff who know EM best. Ops staff should state desired effect to Int.  | Add "Policy" after "Deception". Add "Deception Direction" under Int.   | This function is well described in Art 411 para 1d |
| 11     | Art 315<br>para 4b(2) | Interrogators are not necessarily CI specialists. They are normally PW Interrogators with a Cbt Int background.   | Add new sub para (3) to 4a "supervision of PW interrogators". Delete "such as interrogators" from 4b(2).   |  |
| 12     | Art 317<br>para 3     | See Serial 9 above  | Delete EW responsibility from this para and add new para on this subject.  |  |

| SERIAL | REF   | OBSN   | CHANGE RECOMMENDATION                                       | REMARKS   |
|--------|---|--|---|---|
| (a)    | (b)   | (c)  | (d)   | (e)   |
| 13     | Art 320<br>para 2d                          | If a single photo interpreter is meant, he is located with the Int staff. If a Det is meant, it could be located at the comm centre. This is assuming a photo recece unit is in loc. | Delete ref to Photo Interpreter                             | It should be noted that a hel sqn does not have a vertical photo capability. It is an unstable platform. Its oblique capability is limited to friendly air space. |
| 14     | Art 321<br>paras 3<br>to 4                  | The MP Advisor/Unit CO must be listed. He is located near the Ops Centre at any level (as indicated in Art 326 para 1f.)   | New sub para in 321 para 3 under "Military Police".         | Art 321 para 5-refers   |
| 15     | Art 323<br>para 1a(6)                       | See Serial 14  | Add Military Police to 323 para 1a(6)                       |   |
| 16     | Art 323<br>para 1<br>&<br>Art 326<br>para 1 | EW Cell from sp unit not reflected at Main HQ.   | Add EW Cell   |   |
| 17     | Art 335<br>para 5c                          | See Serial 9. The staff is responsible to the EW Cell not to signals. The Signal Advisor's responsibility is to provide comm sp to EW as is done for other functions/units.          | Cross reference to new para referred to in Serial 12 above. |   |
| 18     | Art 335<br>para 6a(6)                       | See Serials 9, 16, 17 above  | Delete 6a(6)  | Art 336 para 3 is correct. The EW Advisor is directly responsible to him for ECM and ultimately for all EW Ops.   |

| SERIAL | REF               | OBSN  | CHANGE RECOMMENDATION   | REMARKS  |
|--------|-------------------|---|---|--|
| (a)    | (b)               | (c)   | (d)   |  |
| 19     | Anx B<br>to Ch 3  | Bde MP officer is indep unit CO   | Change line diagram to reflect indep unit                                   | Described correctly in Anx D to Ch 2.  |
| 20     | Anx F<br>to Ch 3  | EW Advisor/CO in Orders Gp  | Add EW Advisor to two columns   |  |
| 21     | Art 405<br>para 7 | No indication of attached Int specialists   | Add specialist intelligence/CI tms when att                                 | ✓  |
| 22     | Art 405<br>para 8 | See SERIAL 21   | Add CI/FS Specialists   | ✓  |
| 23     | Art 405<br>para 9 | A. Signals Intelligence consists of Communications Inteligence and Electronic Intelligence.<br><br>B. Specialist sources.   | A. Delete either SIGINT or COMINT/ELINT.<br>B. Add CI, Tech Int Specialists | ✓  |
| 24     | Art 409           | Templating is another word for doing what Int staffs have always done. It is not understood why <u>some</u> interpretation techniques are included in this overview manual. This type of discussion along with other int techniques will be contained in CFP 315(2) currently being rewritten (see also remarks). | Delete Art 409  | It should be noted that templating in the US Army sense is not encouraged in the CF int community. ✓ |

| SERIAL | REF                            | OBSN   | CHANGE RECOMMENDATION | REMARKS |
|--------|--------------------------------|--|-----------------------|---------|
| (a)    | (b)                            | (c)  | (d)                   | (e)     |
| 25     | Art 410<br>para 1 &<br>Art 418 | It should be noted that the definition of CI is under review by the Int community along with the concept of Tactical Security. In essence, the trend is for Tactical Security (frequently called Operational Security) to include, in addition to the areas listed, communications Security and the whole function directed by one staff officer/cell (the CI staff) | No change at present. |         |
| 26     | Art 426<br>Para 3              | See Serial 2. It is noted that the distinct identity of EW with resultant emphasis is given at Corps (para 2). As indicated above, the multi staff high priority emphasis interest in EW demands a very distinct focal point. If this is not possible and the function must remain sponsored by another identity, the intelligence staff is a more logical choice.   | No change at present. |         |
| 27     | Art 421                        | Rear Area Security is being examined in several quarters. A principal question raised is the increasing need to specialty design and employ a special unit/fmn for such a task.  | No change at present. |         |

X

X

X

| SERIAL | REF                 | OBSN  | CHANGE RECOMMENDATION  | REMARKS |
|--------|---------------------|---|--|---------|
| (a)    | (b)                 | (c)   | (d)  | (d)     |
| 28     | Art 427<br>para 12c | At present, EW dets do not have a self-defence capability. They must rely on being within a unit local defence perimeter.   | A statement on local defence is required.                                | X       |
| 29     | Art 428<br>para 2   | The EW Tac is the (staff) element referred to in previous serials. While as the Sqn Comd isn't always present at the HQ, this is his base.  | Changes recommended in Serials 2, 9, 12, 16 and 17.                      | X       |
| 30     | Art 443<br>para 5   | Air recce requests and reporting procedures must receive the same attention as Close Air Support (Art 444). Frequently, confusion results when requests and reports are passed between originator and the Air Unit tasked without intelligence staff vetting and co-ordination. | Amendment need to paras 5, 6b(4) and 6d or a new article similar to 444. | X       |
| 31     | Art 465             | There is a need for a CAMG staff and liaison cell. Its function is essential to counter intelligence interests amongst others.  | Insert CAMG function.  | X       |
| 32     | Art 620<br>para 4   | The collection plan is interrelated directly with surveillance, EW, covering troops and and indirectly related to the remainder of these plans.   | Insert the Intelligence Collection Plan.                                 | ✓       |



DEPARTMENT OF NATIONAL DEFENCE



MINISTÈRE DE LA DÉFENSE NATIONALE

*CSC comment*

CANADIAN LAND FORCES COMMAND AND STAFF COLLEGE  
COLLEGE DE COMMANDEMENT ET D'ETAT-MAJOR DES FORCES TERRESTRES CANADIENNES

SC 2900-1  
FORT FRONTENAC  
KINGSTON, ONTARIO  
K7K 2X8

*18* Oct 79

National Defence Headquarters  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0K2

Attention: DLP 4 ✓

NDRMS/OGDBN 3-3-2

Referred to  
Transmits à..... *DLP 4*

OCT 22 1979

File No  
Dossier No. *2910-CFP 301-1*

Charged to/Chargé à..... *DG 15 OPT 3*

*6/9/79*

CFP 301(1) FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
(FIRST DRAFT) CLFCSC COMMENTS

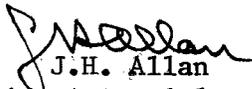
1. The first draft of CFP 301(1) is excellent.
2. Specific recommendations are:
  - a. Overlap and duplication between the opening chapters of CFP 301(1) and CFP 300 must be kept to a minimum. An examination must be made of CFP 300 Interim before it goes into final draft to reduce this duplication. The CFP 301(1) version is preferable to the CFP 300 version where duplication does exist. Perhaps CFP 300 can be shortened drastically since it is in many cases a simple repeat of ATP 35. ①
  - b. Page 1-11, para 3. In discussing the threat emphasis is placed, correctly, on the mounted, massed blitzkrieg type of attack. However, what does not emerge clearly is the Soviet capability for dismounted attack after their mounted masses have been halted by the defender. Para 3 must be lengthened to cover this dismounted capability. ② ✓
  - c. Page 1-13, para 5. It is believed that the Soviets integrate close air support and air interdiction as well as artillery in Radio Electronic Combat. ③ ✓

.../2



- 2 -

- d. Page 2-17, para 2b. In this para and elsewhere "economy of effort" should be used in place of "economy of force" since the Canadian principle of war is "economy of effort". (4) ✓
- e. Page 2-20, para 6. Since air defence artillery can never "prevent" the enemy from interfering with ground operations its role should be stated as: "to hinder enemy interference with ground operations" or "to reduce enemy interference with ground operations to an acceptable level." (5) ✓
- f. Page 3-7, para 1. The last sentence should address the role of the Deputy Brigade Commander in the command chain. (4) ✓
- g. Page 4-33, para 1. It needs to be stressed that any deception, tactical or strategic, must be approved and controlled by corps headquarters or higher. (17) ✓
- h. Section 8, Chapter 4. The new terminology "battlefield air interdiction" needs to be introduced into this entire section. The distinction must be made between the tasks of close air support, battlefield air interdiction, and air interdiction. (8)

  
J.H. Allan  
Lieutenant-Colonel  
for Commandant

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP301-1

2910-CFP 301 (1) (DDPR)

~~3290-251/0~~

PA

18 Oct 79

DMPR 2

CFP 301 (1) FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FIRST DRAFT

Ref: A. Combat Service Support Study - Dental  
3290-251/0 (DDPR) 31 Jan 79

1. The following amendments are required with regard to the dental aspects of CFP 301 (1):
  - a. Chapter 2 Section 4 Serial 218 Para 7b (3) 2-57 & 2-58  
A Field Dental Company which has six laboratory sections and fifteen clinic sections. It has full mobility and is capable of deploying two laboratory sections and three clinical sections with each brigade. The sections may be assigned to the field ambulance or major brigade units depending on the operational situation.
  - b. Chapter 2 Section 4 Serial 218 Para 7b (4) 2-58  
A Support Dental Company which is responsible for dental service to all divisional units. It has three laboratory sections and 10 clinic sections. It deploys in the division administrative area.
  - c. Annex A to Chapter 3 3-A1  
The D Dent O position to be annotated Col vice LCol.
  - d. Annex B to Chapter 3 3-B1  
The position of CO Field Dental Company to be added to Combat Service Support Advisers.
2. These changes are requested to reflect the doctrine, organization, etc as described in ref A.

.../2

- 2 -

3. For completeness, it is questioned why the organization and administration of a Brigade Group has not been more fully defined in the text.



H.S. Wood  
LCol  
DDPR  
6-7492

RE M I N D E R

REPLY DUE: 30 Nov 79

NOTE: File copy of reply to be passed to Surg Gen

DEPARTMENT OF NATIONAL DEFENCE  
MINISTÈRE DE LA DÉFENSE NATIONALE

**MINUTE SHEET - NOTE DE SERVICE**

SECURITY CLASSIFICATION - COTE DE SÉCURITÉ

**UNCLASSIFIED**

FILE NO. - N° DE DOSSIER  
2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP 4)  
T.D.D.T.

REFERENCE - RÉFÉRENCE

CFP 301(1) - FORMATIONS IN BATTLE - FIRST DRAFT

DATED - DATÉE

5 Oct 79

REFERRED TO  
TRANSMISE À

REMARKS - REMARQUES

(To be signed in full showing Appointment, Telephone Number and Date)  
(Attaché de signature, fonction, numéro de téléphone et date)

DGDS

1. The Surg Gen has indicated that the Branch reply to this memorandum is to include DGDS comments.
2. There is only one copy of the draft available in the Branch.
3. May your comments be received, please.

M.E. Pillar  
LCol  
DMPR-2  
2-2696

12 Oct 79

3/4/11/10



National Défense  
Defence nationale

2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP 4)

National Defence Headquarters  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0K2

5 October, 1979

Distribution List

CFP 301(1) - FORMATIONS IN BATTLE - FIRST DRAFT

1. Enclosed for comment is the first draft of the subject manual, prepared under contract by LCol (ret'd) W.E.J. Hutchinson.
2. The draft was prepared in accordance with a writing plan that incorporated the comments of primary and secondary sources. It complements CFP 300 and is intended to avoid duplication except where necessary to preserve its "free standing" quality. The organizations discussed are based on an advanced copy of CFP 303(1) - War Establishment and Equipment Data.
3. Comments should include specific recommendations on how observed faults can be overcome. Typing and spelling errors need not be the subject of comment. Recommendations to eliminate text elements, to reduce the size of the text without undermining its free standing quality, should include reference to other doctrinal manuals where the ideas are included.
4. The form of comments is not important except that their handling is facilitated if they are presented serially and include:
  - a. a reference to the draft's text showing page and text reference;
  - b. a recommendation for a specific change; and
  - c. a brief explanation of the reason for the change.
5. Comments should reach DLP 4 not later than 30 Nov 79. The short response is consistent with efforts to provide doctrinal references in time to be of value to RV80.

*DSP/R2 (L. H. D. D. D. D.)*  
 your action, pls. (increase DEDS  
 + 20  
 Comments)  
 new  
 10/10  
Attachment

*J.K. Dangerfield*  
 J.K. Dangerfield  
 Colonel  
 Director Land Plans  
 for Chief of the Defence Staff

DISTRIBUTION LIST

ACTION

INFO (W/O ATTS)

EXTERNAL

FMC  
AIRCOM  
CFCSC  
CLFCSC

INTERNAL

Surg Gen  
DGCEO  
DGIS  
DGLEM  
DGMAP  
DGMEO  
DGRET  
DGSS  
DGT  
D Armd  
D Arty  
D Inf  
DLA  
DLO  
DLOR  
DLR

DCDS  
CLDO



NDRMS

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP301-1

~~2910 CFP 301(1)~~ (DLES)

10 Oct 79

Distribution List

CFP 301(1) FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FIRST DRAFT

1. DLES has just received, and is currently reviewing, the first draft of CFP 301(1).
2. This manual was produced on contract by LCol (Ret'd) WEJ Hutchinson, and is intended to replace the long obsolete CAMT 1-11.
3. It follows on from the general guidelines set down in CFP 300 The Conduct of Land Operations, which in turn is based in large part on current NATO tactical doctrine.
4. As we must provide comments to DLP on the manual by 30 Nov 79, action addressees who wish to review it are asked to let me know when they would like to see it.



J.I. Hanson  
Col  
DLES

DISTRIBUTION LIST

DCGEM  
DCMEM  
DLAEEM  
DSVEM

2910-CFP301-1  
~~2910-CFP-301(1)~~ (DLP 4)

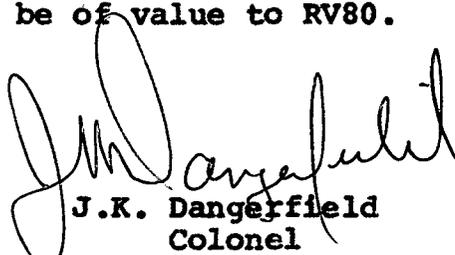
National Defence Headquarters  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0K2

5 October, 1979

**Distribution List**

**CFP 301(1) - FORMATIONS IN BATTLE - FIRST DRAFT**

1. Enclosed for comment is the first draft of the subject manual, prepared under contract by LCol (ret'd) W.E.J. Hutchinson.
2. The draft was prepared in accordance with a writing plan that incorporated the comments of primary and secondary sources. It complements CFP 300 and is intended to avoid duplication except where necessary to preserve its "free standing" quality. The organizations discussed are based on an advanced copy of CFP 303(1) - War Establishment and Equipment Data.
3. Comments should include specific recommendations on how observed faults can be overcome. Typing and spelling errors need not be the subject of comment. Recommendations to eliminate text elements, to reduce the size of the text without undermining its free standing quality, should include reference to other doctrinal manuals where the ideas are included.
4. The form of comments is not important except that their handling is facilitated if they are presented serially and include:
  - a. a reference to the draft's text showing page and text reference;
  - b. a recommendation for a specific change; and
  - c. a brief explanation of the reason for the change.
5. Comments should reach DLP 4 not later than 30 Nov 79. The short response is consistent with efforts to provide doctrinal references in time to be of value to RV80.



J.K. Dangerfield  
Colonel

Director Land Plans  
for Chief of the Defence Staff

**Attachment**

DISTRIBUTION LIST

ACTION

INFO (W/O ATTS)

EXTERNAL

FMC  
AIRCOM  
CFCSC  
CLFCSC

INTERNAL

~~Surg Gen~~ DMOT  
DGCEO DCEG  
DGIS / OP+T  
DGLEM DLAEEM  
DGMAP D LOG OPS  
DGMEQ DMEP  
DGREY DIT  
DGSS  
~~DGP~~  
D Armd  
D Arty  
D Inf  
DLA  
DLO  
DLOR  
DLR

DCDS  
CLDO

Maj R.G. Graham, 2-8550/mr



9264



Canadian Armed Forces Forces armées canadiennes  
Mobile Command Force mobile



NO. DDN 332  
File No. *DLP*  
Transmis à .....

FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (Doc)

SEP 21 1979

Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, Qué.  
J3Y 5T5

File No. *2910-CFP 301-1*  
Deser. No. ....  
Original to/à *NDHQ OPT 3*  
*6-9-79*

19 Sep 79

Distribution List

PAYMENT OF CONTRACT AUTHOR - LCOL (RET) W.E. HUTCHINSON

- References: A. 5923-1000 (CPRC 3) of 28 Nov 78 (Copy attached)
- B. 2910-CFP 301(1) (Doc) of 27 Jan 79 (Copy attached)

- The enclosed claim for the amount of \$4,400 has been submitted for payment by LCol (Ret) W.E. Hutchinson in accordance with the terms of his contract (see References A and B) for the production of CFP 301(1) Mechanized Formations in Battle.
- The above amount is authorized for completion of Stage 2 of the contract, the production of a first draft of the publication. The amount represents 55 days work at a per diem rate of \$80.00.
- Copies of the contract authorization (Reference A) and the contract (Reference B) are enclosed, together with three copies of LCol W.E. Hutchinson's invoice which has been approved by NDHQ (DLP 4).
- May a cheque for the amount of \$4,400 be issued in favour of LCol (Ret) W.E. Hutchinson and forwarded to his address which is:

1610 Jubilee Ave, Apt 203  
Victoria, B.C.  
V8R 6P3

*② DLP 4-2*

*For your info*

*Pal  
DLP 4  
24 Sep 79*

I.C. Douglas  
Lieutenant-Colonel  
Senior Staff Officer Coordination  
for Commander

Enclosures:

DISTRIBUTION LIST

Action

Information

External

External

CFB Montreal (for Base Comptroller) → NDHQ (for DLP) (less enclosures)

Internal

SSO Finance (less enclosures) 000463  
SO Doc Prod (less enclosures)

21  
Done

LA 2910-CFP301-1

NNNNVV AVA10 UU  
RR RCCWC  
DE RCWEVLA 3588 1372251  
ZNR UUUUU  
R 172230Z MAY 79  
FM 3 PPCLI ESQUIMALT  
TO NDHQ OTTAWA  
BT  
UNCLAS ADM 319  
FOR DLP 4

138 05 10 '79

DLP

② PA in 2910-CFP301(1)-

DLP4 will activate

Paley  
DLP4  
18 May 79

SUBJ: BOOK CONTRACT LC OL HUTCHINSON

1. LC OL D. HANSON HQ PACIFIC REGION FMO DOCKYARD B.C. HAS AGREED TO HOLD CD STATUS AS DISCUSSED
2. PLEASE FWD TO HIS LOC ASP
3. ADVISE DISPATCH VIA 3 PPCLI

BT

£3588

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP 4)

*PA*  
*14* May 79

NDHQ/AU Security

EXTENSION OF SECURITY CLEARANCE  
430 291 575 LCOL (RET'D) W.E.J. HUTCHINSON

1. 430 291 575 LCol (Retd) W.E.J. Hutchinson has been awarded a contract for the writing of CFP 301(1) - Army Formations in Battle. LCol Hutchinson requires to receive certain classified information in order to complete the terms of this contract.
2. It is therefore requested that LCol (Retd) Hutchinson be authorized to receive classified information to SECRET level during the period 15 May 79 - 1 Jan 80.

*J.K. Dangerfield*  
for J.K. Dangerfield  
Col  
DLP  
2-5435

*P.A. White*  
P.A. White, Maj, 2-8550/jem

MESSAGE FORM  
FORMULE DE MESSAGE

2910-CFP 301(1)

2910-CFP 301(1)

FILE DOSSIER (DLP)

|            |          |       |           |              |            |      |               |        |          |
|------------|----------|-------|-----------|--------------|------------|------|---------------|--------|----------|
| PRE<br>PRI | LMF<br>L | CLASS | CIC<br>CT | OSRI<br>IDSO | SSN<br>NSS | DATE | TIME<br>HEURE | CLASS. | RC<br>CD |
|            |          |       |           |              |            |      |               |        |          |

FOR COMMUNICATIONS USE - A L'USAGE DU CENTRE DES COMMUNICATIONS/TRANSMISSIONS

|  |                                      |  |  |
|--|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| PRECEDENCE - ACTION<br>PRIORITÉ - ACTION | PRECEDENCE - INFO<br>PRIORITÉ - INFO | DATE - TIME GROUP<br>GROUPE DATE - HEURE | MESSAGE INSTRUCTIONS<br>INSTRUCTIONS (MESSAGE) |
| <b>ROUTINE</b>                           |                                      | 06 19 27 Z MAR 79                        |  |

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| SECURITY CLASSIFICATION<br>COTE DE SÉCURITÉ | SPECIAL HANDLING<br>INSTRUCTION SPECIALE | ORIGINATOR'S NUMBER<br>NUMÉRO DE L'EXPÉDITEUR |
| <b>UNCLAS</b>                               |  | DLP 45584                                     |

FROM DE NDHQ OTTAWA

TO-A CLFCSC KINGSTON

INFO

FOR SSO COORD

SUBJ: PRODUCTION OF CFP 301(1) - ARMY FORMATIONS IN BATTLE

REFS: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) DLP 9 FEB 79

B. CLFCSC TRG 1032 152015Z FEB 79

1. PARA 4 OF REF A PROPOSED THAT ONE OF THE SIGNIFICANT SOURCES OF REFERENCE MATERIAL FOR THE AUTHOR WOULD BE THE PRECIS FOR CLFCSC COURSES 7901 AND 7802
2. IT WOULD BE APPRECIATED IF A SELECTED COLLECTION OF THOSE PRECIS CONSIDERED APPLICABLE TO THE PRODUCTION OF CFP 301(1) BE FORWARDED TO THE AUTHOR AS SOON AS FEASIBLE
3. ADDRESS IS LCOL (RET'D) WEJ HUTCHINSON, APT 203, 1610 JUBILEE AVENUE, VICTORIA, BC, V8R 4N3

|  |  |   |                       |
|--|--|---|-----------------------|
| PAGE<br>OF<br>1<br>DE<br>1                   | DRAFTER'S NAME<br>NOM DU RÉDACTEUR<br>PA ROY, LCOL | OFFICE<br>BUREAU<br>DLP 4                                   | TEL. - TÉL.<br>2-8550 |
| FOR OPR'S USE<br>A L'USAGE DE<br>L'OPÉRATEUR | DATE   | TIME<br>HEURE   | SYSTEM<br>SYSTÈME     |
| R<br>T                                       |  |   | OPERATOR<br>OPÉRATEUR |
| SECURITY CLASSIFICATION<br>COTE DE SÉCURITÉ  |  | SIGNATURE OF RELEASING OFFICER<br>DE L'OFFICIER APPROBATEUR |                       |
|  |  | G.R. HIRTER, 000467<br>LCOL A/DLP                           |                       |

CHIEF LAND DOCTRINE  
AND OPERATIONS

MAR 7 1979

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301(1) (D Engr ST)

6 Mar 79

DLP 4-3

CFP 301(1) - ARMY FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
WRITING PLAN - REQUEST FOR COMMENTS

Refs: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP) dated 09 Feb 79  
B. 2910-CFP 301(1) (DGME0) dated 27 Feb 79

1. Further to ref B, the Engineer Study Team wishes to make two comments on ref A.

- a. Consider adding "Protection" as an article heading in Chapter 1, Section 2. The various combat development studies have shown considerable difference of opinion in this area.
- b. Given the European scenario, Chapter 2, Section 3 should include a discussion of the staff relationship with the host nation. At the brigade group level, this may be minimal but at division level it is a major staff action. Something equivalent to the US G5 staff section is needed.

  
R.E. Moore  
LCol  
D Engr ST  
6-4357

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301(1) (DLO 2-2)

5 Mar 79

DLP 4-3

CFP 301(1) - ARMY FORMATIONS IN BATTLE

Ref: 2910 CFP 301(1) (DLP) 9 Feb 79

1. The subject writing plan has been reviewed by this office in accordance with reference. The following observations are offered:

a. Organization General. While the organization of this section is considered satisfactory, care must be taken to ensure no pre-supposing of grouping for a brigade. To do so is to seriously restrict the flexibility of command by the divisional commander. In fact, it would be much simpler if the manual was prepared entirely within a divisional concept.

b. Offensive Operations. A section on passage of lines should be included within this chapter, rather than treated separately.

c. Defensive Operations:

(1) Planning the defence. This section should include detail on the following plans:

(a) The surveillance plan (including the divisional commander's patrol/surveillance policy), *FMU*

(b) the anti-armoured plan,

(c) counter penetration (rather than blocking) and counter attack plan, and

(d) the fire plan (to include the air defence plan), *FMU*

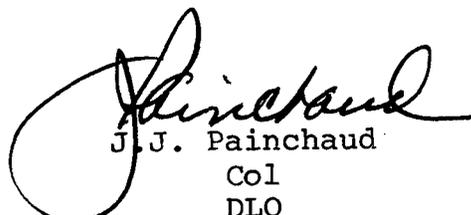
(2) Passage of lines. A section on this subject should be included within defensive operations rather than treated separately. ✓

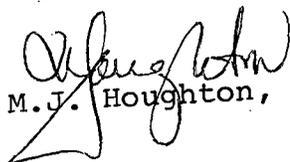
.../2

- 2 -

- (3) Relief operation. This section should be considered under defensive operations, dwelling primarily on relief in place. (Note: passage of lines should not be classified as a relief operation).

2. The author for this project should be made aware that the Australian Army has just published a complete series of doctrinal manuals dealing with the Division in offensive and defensive operations. They have been thoroughly reviewed, reworded and rewritten over the past three years and are, without doubt, of considerable value as an aid to the development of Canadian Army doctrine. The manuals may be obtained on loan from Major Colin Brewer, RA Inf, 992-6233.

  
J.J. Painchaud  
Col  
DLO  
2-3718

  
M.J. Houghton, Maj/DLO 2-2/6-4102/te

CHIEF LAND DOCTRINE  
AND OPERATIONS

FEB 27 1979

DLP 4-3

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301 (1) (DGME0)

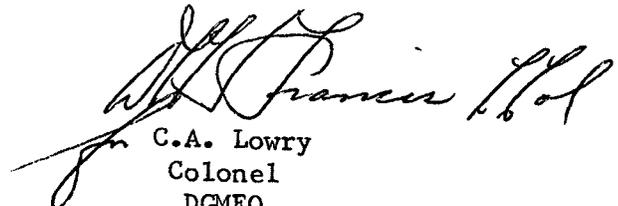
27 Feb 79

DLP 4-3

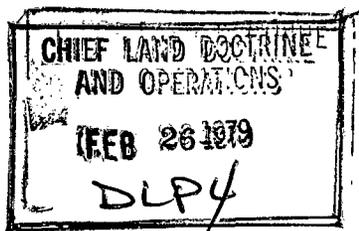
CFP 301(1) - ARMY FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
WRITING PLAN  
REQUEST FOR COMMENTS

Ref: 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP) dated 09 February, 1979

In reply to ref, DGME0 submits no comments.

  
C.A. Lowry  
Colonel  
DGME0  
2-7949

MEMORANDUM



2910-CFP 315 (P&T)

2910-CFP 301 (1) (OP&T)

26 Feb 79

DLP 4

CFP 301 (1) - WRITING PLAN

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301 (1) 9 Feb 79 - Annex A

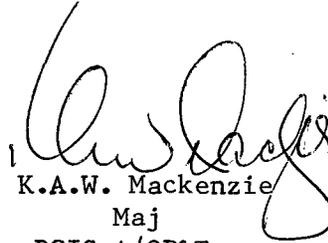
1. Ref A has been reviewed as requested and the following comments are offered:

- a. there should be some discussion of counter-intelligence (probably in Chapter 3, perhaps in a new section). This would perhaps include cross references to psychological operations and deception and certainly with the intelligence section. We envisage a divisional unit something like the UK divisional intelligence company with an integral counterintelligence section;
- b. there should be some discussion of surveillance planning, perhaps in Chapter 3; and
- c. although there is discussion of traffic control in respect of specific operations, there does not appear to be any general discussion of military police (MP) functions. In this regard we have identified that the title "Provost Marshal" should be taken back into use to reduce confusion for our allies. We have also identified that an MP company should be a divisional unit with platoons under command at brigade. These MP elements would be supported by the headquarters and signals units.

.../2

-2-

2. The above remarks are addressed to a divisional concept. We feel that while the current brigade group MP establishment and concept are adequate, the intelligence resources would not meet the brigade group's requirements. An independent brigade group would require additional interrogation and counterintelligence support.



K.A.W. Mackenzie

Maj

DGIS A/OP&T

5-7877

27/14

PA  
PA

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP301-1

~~2910-CFP 301(1)~~ (DLP)

23 Feb 79

NDHQ

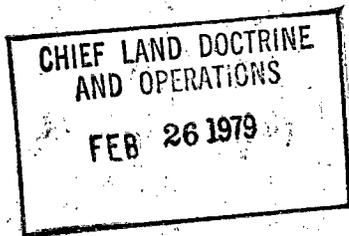
Attention: Director Land Plans

CFP 301(1) - ARMY FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
WRITING PLAN  
REQUEST FOR COMMENTS

- Refs: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP) 9 February 1979
- B. 2910-2 (DCDS) 4 July 1978 (DNHQ INSTR DCDS 7/78 -  
LAND FORCE DOCTRINE)
1. As per Ref A, the Surgeon General has no comments.

  
R.F. Jackson  
Col  
DMPR  
2-2392

MEMORANDUM



2910-CFP 301(1) (DSupSPP)

23 Feb 79

DLP

CFP 301(1) - ARMY FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
WRITING PLAN  
DGSS COMMENTS

---

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP) 9 Feb 79

1. As a secondary agency for the provision of input to the subject document, the following paragraphs contain DGSS comments on the writing plan.

2. The following are specific comments on Annex A to Ref A:

a. Serial 3

Section 2d "Maintenance" causes some concern. While it is appreciated that "Maintenance" in the land force context refers to all aspects of maintaining a formation in battle, in the integrated Canadian Forces "Maintenance" could be considered by many as having a much more narrow meaning. It is suggested that this be overcome by altering the title to "Logistics and Administration".

APP-6

b. Serial 11

The section "COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT" appears to be incomplete in the Brigade Group context. While sub-heading (a) "Division Service Group" appears to be inclusive of all logistics and administration functions, sub-heading (b) "Brigade Group Service Battalion" is not all-inclusive. There are other logistics and administrative elements in the Brigade Group which are not sub-units of the Service Battalion, e.g., medical, dental, etc.

c. Serial 23

The sub-section title should be changed from "Administration" to "Logistics and Administration".

APP-6

.../2

d. Serials 24 to 31 inclusive

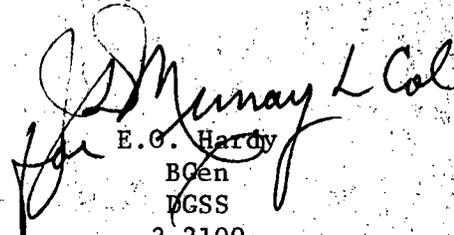
As Chapter 4, "OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS", contains, at Serial 23, a section on Logistics and Administration, it is recommended that Chapter 5, "DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS", contain a parallel section.

e. General

As implied above, there appears to be an inconsistency in the section and sub-section headings used. As indicated, the combat service support function has been referred to as Maintenance (Serial 3), Personnel and Logistics (Serial 9), Combat Service Support (Serial 11), Logistics and Administration (Serial 23), and Support (Serial 38). The title "Logistics and Administration" is recommended, with "Combat Service Support" as an alternative.

See def of "Adm"  
in MP-6

3. These general comments on the writing plan are submitted for your consideration.

  
E.G. Hardy  
BCen  
DGSS  
3-2100

NNNNVV AVC306 UU

RR RCCWC

DE RCCBJQA 0141 0522110

ZNR UUUUU

R 211820Z FEB 79

M CFC TORONTO

TO RCCWC/NDHQ OTTAWA

INFO RCCPG/CLFCSC KINGSTON

BT

UNCLAS CFC 108

NDHQ FOR DLP

SUBJ: WRITING PLAN - CFP 301(1)

REF: YOUR 2910 - CFP301(1)(DLP) 9 FEB 79

1. AGREE WITH AIM AND SCOPE OF CFP 301(1) AS STATED IN REF.

WRITING PLAN APPEARS COMPREHENSIVE AND MINOR COMMENTS

FOLLOW. UNFORTUNATELY COMMENTS ARE MADE WITHOUT BENEFIT

OF A COPY OF LATEST APPROACH TO CFP 300

2. PARA 4 OF REF DIRECTS AUTHOR TO THIRD EDITION OF CSC

PUBS 201-205. THE FOURTH EDITION OF THESE PUBS SHOULD BE AVAIL

BY MID APR 79 IF THIS WOULD NOT IMPOSE UNDUE DELAY ON THE AUTHOR

3. SUGGEST CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 BE COMBINED AS PER ATP 35 WITH

CLARIFICATION ON USE OF TERM RETROGRADE OPERATIONS WHICH BY

NATO DEFINITION INCLUDES DELAY WITHDRAWAL AND RETIREMENT

4. IT IS CONSIDERED MOST IMPORTANT THAT THIS MANUAL INCLUDE

PAGE 2 RCCBJQA 0141 UNCLAS

CHEMICAL OPS ESPECIALLY IMPACT ON CONDUCT OR OPS WHEN USED

BY THE ENEMY

BT

0141

052 22 29 '79

DLP

CHIEF LAND DOCTRINE  
AND OPERATIONS

FEB 22 1979

Canadian Armed Forces  
Mobile Command

Forces armées canadiennes  
Force mobile



FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (Doc)

Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, Quebec

J3Y 5T5

9 Mar 79

NRMS/SGDDN 3-3-2

Referred to  
Transmis à

*Dh P4*

Distribution List

COMMENTS ON WRITING PLAN FOR  
CFP 301(1) ARMY FORMATIONS IN BATTLE

*MM 26 1979*

File No  
Dossier No *2910-CFP301-1*

References: A. FMC 2910-CFP 301(1)(DLP) of 9 Feb 79 Charged to/Chargé à

1. The writing plan for CFP 301(1) Army Formations in Battle, which was forwarded with Reference A has been reviewed by the staff of the Combat Development and Training Development Division of this Headquarters. A compilation of the principal observations and suggestions is to be found at Annex A.

2. This Headquarters is generally in agreement with the contents and structure of the writing plan once it has been modified in accordance with the proposals contained in paragraph 5 of Reference A, and adjustments have been made for the enclosed comments.

3. It would be appreciated if a copy of the revised writing plan could be provided to this Headquarters.

J.T.F./A. Liston  
Colonel

DCOS Combat Development and Training Development  
for Commander

*Dh* Enclosure:

DISTRIBUTION LIST

Action

NDHQ (DLP) ✓

Info

- COS Ops
- SSO Doc
- SO Doc Coord
- SSO Armd
- SSO Arty
- SSO Fd Engr
- SSO Inf
- SSO Comm
- SSO Cbt Svc Sp

RE

.....  
.....  
465 80 1015  
.....  
.....  
S-88 KOPPLEN.O.

ANNEX A  
 TO FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DOC)  
 DATED: 9 MAR 79

CFP 301 (1) - LAND FORMATIONS IN BATTLE WRITING PLAN

| SERIAL | CHAPTER           | SECTION      | CONTENT | REFERENCE | REMARKS  | FMC COMMENTS   |
|--------|-------------------|--------------|---------|-----------|----------|--|
| (a)    | (b)               | (c)          | (d)     | (e)       | (f)      | (g)  |
| 1      | INTRO-<br>DUCTION | AIM<br>SCOPE |         |           | Attached | <p><u>GENERAL COMMENTS</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Although sub-para 2.b.(4) of covering letter FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP) of 9 Feb 79 states that CFP 301(1) "is based on the principles and precepts of CFP 300..." it is pointed out that the latter has yet to be approved.</li> <li>2. The publication should not stray too far, from reality. It should not reflect organizations with equipment and capability beyond the Canadian Forces requirement. It must, therefore, take into consideration the current CD studies, and it must also contain present-day organizations and operational equipment. The division and brigade group levels of organization must be presented in sufficient detail, reflecting consistency with CFP 303(1), as to be authoritative.</li> <li>3. Administrative implications should be discussed throughout all phases of war and not just following the chapter on the attack. A chapter on administration should be included if it is not to be covered in a separate manual. Formation level administration as it would be conducted in Europe within a US or GE Corps is not well documented in any of our manuals, yet it is a fact of life in 4 CMBG. It should be treated equally with operations in the same manual.</li> <li>4. The combat development studies now being conducted, and especially the System Study, should have a significant effect on our formation level doctrine manual, if not immediately then in the next couple of years. The author should use these studies as references also.</li> <li>5. While it is vital that this manual be accepted by the two Staff Colleges and used by them, it is equally vital that our field formations concur with it. If it is based primarily on a notional organization (DIV) then it may be considered too theoretical by field formations and end up the same way as our previous efforts (Refs B, C &amp; D).</li> </ol> |

ANNEX A  
 TO FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DOC)  
 DATED: 9 MAR 79

| SERIAL | CHAPTER | SECTION | CONTENT   | REFERENCE                           | REMARKS   | FMC COMMENTS  |
|--------|---------|---------|---|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| (a)    | (b)     | (c)     | (d)   | (e)                                 | (f)   | (g)   |
|        |         |         |   |                                     |   | 6. <u>Title</u> . It is recommended that the title be changed to read Mech Formations in Battle. This will reflect our on-going mechanization progress and it is noted that the CSC 204 reference given at serial 5 outlines the capabilities of the Mech DIV.<br><br>7. Suggest inclusion of description of the enemy. |
| 2      | 1       | 1       | ORGANIZATION<br>GENERAL<br><br>a. Current Canadian land situation.<br>b. Initial response will be for brigade group to fight under direct control of corps or an allied division.<br>c. On mobilization the growth to division. |                                     | It is hoped that this approach will allow:<br><br>a. Major focus on the division with all that means to the combat support arms.<br>b. Sufficient detail of a brigade group actions to allow proper training. | 1. <u>Combat Arms</u> . There must be a section on Armour and Infantry, outlining how the manoeuvre units are organized/grouped and controlled in battle.   |
| 3      |         | 2       | BASIS FOR ORGANIZATION<br><br>a. Firepower.<br>b. Mobility.<br>c. Mass.<br>d. Maintenance.<br>e. Command and Control.   | CFP 300<br>Chapter 3<br>Article 301 |   | 1. "Mass" is meaningless.<br><br>2. "Protection" and "Information" are missing.   |
| 4      |         | 3       | MISSION   | CSC 204<br>Article 103              | To be rewritten for clarity and simplicity.   |   |

ANNEX A  
 TO FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DOC)  
 DATED: 9 MAR 79

| SERIAL | CHAPTER | SECTION | CONTENT   | REFERENCE   | REMARKS   | FMC COMMENTS |
|--------|---------|---------|---|---|---|--------------|
| (a)    | (b)     | (c)     | (d)   | (e)   | (f)   | (g)          |
| 5      |         | 4       | CAPABILITIES  | CSC 204<br>Article 108  | To be modified slightly.  |              |
| 6      |         | 5       | ORGANIZATION - with Diagrams<br><br>a. Typical Corps.<br>b. A Canadian Division including its brigades.<br>c. A Canadian Brigade Group. | CFP 303(1)  | a. As amended.<br>b. Unit organization and roles in outline only.<br>c. Corps units attached - i.e. Electronic Warfare, etc. will be discussed. |              |
| 7      | 2       | 1       | COMMAND AND CONTROL<br>INTRODUCTION   |   |   |              |
| 8      |         | 2       | COMMAND   | CSC 204<br>Articles<br>202, 203,<br>and 204   | A brief discussion of the art of command.   |              |
| 9      |         | 3       | DIVISIONAL STAFF<br><br>a. General.<br>b. Composition.<br>c. Operations Staff and Functions - Personnel and Logistics.                  | CSC 204<br>Articles<br>205 to 208<br>CFP 303(1)<br>pages 2-6<br>to 2-11<br>WD 70458<br>Part 2 | Will include diagrams at both division and brigade levels.  |              |

- 4 -

ANNEX A  
 TO FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DOC)  
 DATED: 9 MAR 79

| SERIAL | CHAPTER | SECTION | CONTENT  | REFERENCE   | REMARKS | FMC COMMENTS  |
|--------|---------|---------|--|---|---------|---|
| (a)    | (b)     | (c)     | (d)  |   |         | (g)   |
| 10     |         | 4       | <b>COMBAT SUPPORT</b><br><br>a. HQ Divisional Artillery.<br>b. HQ Divisional Engineers.<br>c. HQ Divisional Headquarters and Signals Regiment.<br>d. HQ Divisional Aviation. | CSC 204<br><br>Article 209<br>Article 210<br>Article 211<br><br>Article 212 |         | 1. <b>Combat Support.</b> If the intention is to outline DIV Combat Support then the DIV Recce Unit, DIV Anti-Tank Battalion and perhaps the Intelligence Platoon should be included.<br><br>2. Close air sp should also be included. |
| 11     |         | 5       | <b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT</b><br><br>a. Division Service Group.<br>b. Brigade Group Service Battalion.   | CFP 303(1)<br>and CSC 204<br>Article 329                                    |         |   |
| 12     |         | 6       | <b>DIVISIONAL HEADQUARTERS</b><br><br>a. General.<br>b. Main and Rear Headquarters.<br>c. Functional Grouping.<br>d. Deployment.<br>e. Management.                           | CSC 204<br>Articles<br>213 to 218   |         |   |
| 13     |         | 7       | <b>COMMUNICATIONS</b><br><br>a. Responsibility<br>b. Security  | CSC 204<br>Articles<br>219 to 221   |         |   |

.../5

000483

ANNEX A  
 TO FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DCC)  
 DATED: 9 MAR 79

| SERIAL | CHAPTER | SECTION   | CONTENT  | REFERENCE                   | REMARKS                                | FMC COMMENTS   |
|--------|---------|---|--|-----------------------------|--|--|
| (a)    | (b)     | (c)   | (d)  | (e)                         | (f)                                    | (g)  |
| 14     |         | 8   | BATTLE PROCEDURE<br><br>a. Reconnaissance, appreciations and orders.<br>b. Deployment.   | CSC 204                     | Diagrams where necessary.              |  |
| 15     | 3       | 1<br>2<br>3<br>4<br>5<br>6<br>7<br>8<br>9<br>10<br>11<br>12<br>13<br>14<br>15<br>16 | CONSTANT FACTORS IN COMBAT<br>INTRODUCTION<br>INTELLIGENCE<br>LOGISTICS AND ADMINISTRATION<br>GROUND AND WEATHER<br>TACTICAL PROTECTION AND SECURITY<br>ELECTRONIC WARFARE<br>PSYCHOLOGICAL OPERATIONS<br>COOPERATION WITH OTHER ELEMENTS<br>RECONNAISSANCE<br>MOVEMENT<br>AIR MOBILITY<br>REAR AREA SECURITY<br>DECEPTION<br>LIAISON<br>GROUPING<br>AIR SUPPORT | CFP 300<br>CLFCSC<br>Precis | Including Tactical and Administrative. | 1. Risk of redundancy and/or inconsistency here since "Constant Factors" albeit different ones are treated in CFP 300. Should be deleted.<br><br>2. Suggest these can all be fitted into functions of combat i.e.:<br><br>fire<br>movement<br>protection<br>info/int<br>command and control<br>admin<br><br>Most of these are already listed in CFP 300 as "Elements of Tactics".<br><br>3. "Administration" includes personnel and logistics. |
| 16     | 4       | 1   | OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS<br>INTRODUCTION   | CSC 204<br>CLFCSC<br>Precis |  |  |

ANNEX A  
 TO FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DOC)  
 DATED: 9 MAR 79

| SERIAL | CHAPTER | SECTION | CONTENT   | REFERENCE             | REMARKS             | FMC COMMENTS |
|--------|---------|---------|---|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| (a)    | (b)     | (c)     | (d)   |                       | (e)                 | (g)          |
| 17     |         | 2       | <b>ADVANCE</b><br><br>a. General including advance to, and advance in, contact.<br>b. Planning and Grouping.<br>c. Fire Planning.<br>d. Conduct.<br>e. Meeting Engagement.<br>f. Covering Force Operations. | CFP 300<br>throughout |                     |              |
| 18     |         | 3       | <b>ATTACK</b><br><br>a. General including fundamentals.<br>b. Types and Forms.<br>c. Stages.<br>d. Planning.<br>e. Conduct of Penetration.<br>f. Conduct of Envelopment.<br>g. Infiltration.                |                       | Including diagrams. |              |
| 19     |         | 4       | <b>EXPLOITATION AND PURSUIT</b><br><br>a. General.<br>b. Conduct.   |                       |                     |              |

.../7

- 7 -

ANNEX A  
 TO FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DC)  
 DATED: 9 MAR 79

| SERIAL | CHAPTER | SECTION | CONTENT  | REFERENCE  | REMARKS             | FMC COMMENTS   |
|--------|---------|---------|--|--|---------------------|--|
| (a)    | (b)     | (c)     | (d)  | (e)  | (f)                 | (g)  |
| 20     |         | 5       | <b>CONDITIONS OF REDUCED VISIBILITY</b><br><br>a. General.<br>b. Planning.<br>c. Conduct.  |  |                     |  |
| 21     |         | 6       | <b>CROSSING AND BREACHING OBSTACLES</b><br><br>a. General.<br>b. Water Crossings.<br>c. Breaching Operations.<br>d. Traffic Control. | CFP 300<br>ATP 35<br>CLPCSC<br>Precis<br>CSC 204 | Including diagrams. |  |
| 22     |         | 7       | <b>ATTACKING BUILT-UP AREAS</b><br><br>a. General.<br>b. Planning.<br>c. Conduct.  | CFP 300<br>CLPCSC<br>Precis<br>CSC 204           |                     |  |
| 23     |         | 8       | <b>ADMINISTRATION</b><br><br>a. General.<br>b. Advance.<br>c. Attack.  | CFP 301(4)<br>CFP 300                            |                     |  |
| 24     | 5       | 1       | <b>DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS</b><br>GENERAL   | CFP 300  |                     | 1. The Defensive Operations Chapter needs a section on administration. Preferably it should also be covered in Sections 3 and 7. |

- 8 -

ANNEX A  
 TO FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DOC)  
 DATED: 9 MAR 79

| SERIAL | CHAPTER | SECTION | CONTENT  | REFERENCE                              | REMARKS | FMC COMMENTS   |
|--------|---------|---------|--|--|---------|--|
| (a)    | (b)     | (c)     | (d)  |  |         | (g)  |
| 25     |         | 2       | <b>THE DEFENSIVE BATTLE</b><br><br>a. General including fundamentals.<br>b. Stages.<br>c. Layout of the Defensive Area.<br>d. The Division/Brigade Group in the Corps Defence.   | CFP 300                                |         |  |
| 26     |         | 3       | <b>PLANNING THE DEFENCE</b><br><br>a. General.<br>b. The Commander's Appreciation and Plan.<br>c. The Importance of Ground.<br>d. Concept of Operations.<br>e. The Deployment Plan.<br>f. The Fire Plan.<br>g. The Obstacle Plan.<br>h. Blocking and Counter Attack Plans. | CFP 300<br>CLFCSC<br>Precis<br>CSC 204 |         | 1. <u>Planning the Defence.</u> The following subjects should be added:<br><br>a. Surveillance Plan;<br>b. Administrative Plan;<br>c. Air Defence Plan;<br>d. Anti-Armour Plan; and<br>e. Electronic Warfare Plan. |
| 27     |         | 4       | <b>CONDUCT OF THE DEFENCE</b><br><br>a. Covering Force Stage.<br>b. Main Defensive Stage.<br>c. Counter Attack Stage.  | CFP 300<br>CLFCSC<br>Precis<br>CSC 204 |         |  |

.../9

000487

ANNEX A  
 TO FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DOC)  
 DATED: 9 MAR 79

| SERIAL | CHAPTER | SECTION | CONTENT   | REFERENCE | REMARKS             | FMC COMMENTS                           |
|--------|---------|---------|---|-----------|---------------------|--|
| (a)    | (b)     | (c)     | (d)   | (e)       | (f)                 | (g)                                    |
| 28     |         | 5       | <b>DELAYING OPERATIONS</b><br><br>a. General including fundamentals.<br>b. Types of Delaying Operations.<br>c. Planning Delaying Operations.<br>d. Conduct of Delaying Operations.                            | CFP 300   | Including diagrams. | Administration should also be covered. |
| 29     |         | 6       | <b>WITHDRAWAL</b><br><br>a. General including fundamentals.<br>b. Planning the withdrawal.<br>c. Conduct of the withdrawal.   | CFP 300   | Including diagrams. | Administration should also be covered. |
| 30     |         | 7       | <b>ASPECTS COMMON TO DELAY AND WITHDRAWAL</b><br><br>a. General.<br>b. Obstacles and Control of Demolitions.<br>c. Traffic Control.<br>d. Liaison.<br>e. Civil Population.<br>f. Protection and Coordination. | CFP 300   |                     |  |
| 31     |         | 8       | <b>DEFENCE IN BUILT-UP AREAS</b><br><br>a. General.<br>b. Planning.<br>c. Conduct.  | CFP 300   | Including diagrams. |  |

ANNEX A  
TO FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DOC)  
DATED: 9 MAR 79

| SERIAL | CHAPTER | SECTION | CONTENT  | REFERENCE          | REMARKS        | FMC COMMENTS   |
|--------|---------|---------|--|--------------------|----------------|--|
| (a)    | (b)     | (c)     | (d)  |                    | (e)            | (g)  |
| 32     | 6       | 1       | SPECIFIC OPERATIONS<br>INTRODUCTION  | CFP 300            |                |  |
| 33     |         | 2       | AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS  | ATPs 36,<br>37, 38 | Outlined only. | 1. Should be deleted. Not within the scope.  |
| 34     |         | 3       | AIRMOBILE OPERATIONS   | ATP 41             | Outline only.  | 1. At what level?<br>2. Canada only has capability for company or very best battalion!       |
| 35     |         | 4       | ENCIRCLED FORCES   | CFP 300            |                | 1. Since this may be a not so rare outcome of defensive ops, it should be covered in Chap 5. |
| 36     |         | 5       | RELIEF OPERATIONS<br>a. General.<br>b. Types.<br>c. Relief in Place.<br>d. Passage of lines - Forward and Rear.<br>e. Command and Control.<br>f. Administration. | CFP 300            |                |  |
| 37     | 7       | 1       | TACTICAL NUCLEAR OPERATIONS<br>INTRODUCTION  |                    |                |  |

- 11 -

ANNEX A  
TO FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DOC)  
DATED: 07 MAR 79

| SERIAL | CHAPTER | SECTION | CONTENT                     | REFERENCE | REMARKS | FMC COMMENTS |
|--------|---------|---------|-----------------------------|-----------|---------|--------------|
| (a)    | (b)     | (c)     | (d)                         |           |         | (g)          |
| 38     |         | 2       | NUCLEAR EFFECTS AND SUPPORT |           |         |              |
| 39     |         | 3       | PLANNING AND REQUESTS       |           |         |              |
| 40     |         | 4       | EMPLOYMENT                  |           |         |              |

CFP 301 (1) - LAND FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
WRITING PLAN

ANNEX A  
 TO 2910 - CFP 301 (1) (DLP)  
 DATED 9 FEB 79

| SERIAL<br>(a) | CHAPTER<br>(b)    | SECTION<br>(c) | CONTENT<br>(d)  | REFERENCE<br>(e)                   | REMARKS<br>(f)   |
|---------------|-------------------|----------------|---|------------------------------------|--|
| 1             | INTRO-<br>DUCTION |                | AIM<br>SCOPE  |                                    | Attached   |
| 2             | 1                 | 1              | ORGANIZATION<br>GENERAL<br>a. Current Canadian land situation.<br>b. Initial response will be for<br>brigade group to fight under<br>direct control of corps or an<br>allied division.<br>c. On mobilization the growth to<br>division. |                                    | It is hoped that this<br>approach will allow:<br>a. Major focus on the<br>division with all that<br>means to the combat<br>support arms;<br>b. Sufficient detail<br>of brigade group<br>actions to allow proper<br>training. |
| 3             |                   | 2              | BASIS FOR ORGANIZATION<br>a. Firepower.<br>b. Mobility.<br>c. Mass.<br>d. Maintenance.<br>e. Command and Control.   | CFP300<br>Chapter 3<br>Article 301 |  |
| 4             |                   | 3              | MISSION   | CSC 204<br>Article 103             | To be rewritten for<br>clarity and simplicity.   |

| (a) | (b) | (c) | (d)   | (e)   | (f)  |
|-----|-----|-----|---|---|--|
| 5   |     | 4   | CAPABILITIES  | CSC 204<br>Article 108  | To be modified slightly.   |
| 6   |     | 5   | ORGANIZATION - with Diagrams<br>a. Typical Corps.<br>b. A Canadian Division including its<br>brigades.<br>c. A Canadian Brigade Group.                            | CFP 303 (1)   | a. As amended.<br>b. Unit organization<br>and roles in outline<br>only.<br>c. Corps units attached-<br>i.e. Electronic Warfare.<br>etc. will be discussed. |
| 7   | 2   |     | COMMAND AND CONTROL   |   |  |
|     |     | 1   | INTRODUCTION  |   |  |
| 8   |     | 2   | COMMAND   | CSC 204<br>Articles<br>202, 203,<br>204.  | A brief discussion of<br>the art of command.   |
| 9   |     | 3   | DIVISIONAL STAFF<br>a. General<br>b. Composition<br><br>c. Operations Staff and Functions.<br>d. Administrative Staff and Functions<br>- Personnel and Logistics. | CSC 204<br>Articles<br>205, to<br>208.<br><br>CFP 303 (1)<br>pages 2-6<br>to 2-11<br>WO 70458<br>Part 2 | Will include diagrams<br>at both division and<br>brigade levels.   |

| (a) | (b) | (c) | (d)  | (e)   | (f)                         |
|-----|-----|-----|--|---|-----------------------------|
| 10  |     | 4   | COMBAT SUPPORT<br>a. HQ Divisional Artillery<br>b. HQ Divisional Engineers<br>c. HQ Divisional Headquarters and<br>Signals Regiment<br>d. HQ Divisional Aviation | CSC 204<br>Article 209<br>Article 210<br>Article 211<br>Article 212 |                             |
| 11  |     | 5   | COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT<br>a. Division Service Group<br>b. Brigade Group Service Battalion  | CFP 303 (1)<br>and CSC 204<br>Article 329                           |                             |
| 12  |     | 6   | DIVISIONAL HEADQUARTERS<br>a. General -<br>b. Main and Rear Headquarters<br>c. Functional Grouping<br>d. Deployment<br>e. Management                             | CSC 204<br>Articles<br>213 to 218                                   |                             |
| 13  |     | 7   | COMMUNICATIONS<br>a. Responsibility<br>b. Security   | CSC 204<br>Articles<br>219 to 221                                   |                             |
| 14  |     | 8   | BATTLE PROCEDURE<br>a. Reconnaissance, appreciations<br>and Orders.<br>b. Deployment.  | CSC 204   | Diagrams where<br>necessary |

| (a) | (b) | (c) | (d)  | (e)           | (f)                                      |
|-----|-----|-----|--|---------------|--|
| 15  | 3   | 1   | CONSTANT FACTORS IN COMBAT                                   |               |  |
|     |     | 2   | INTRODUCTION   | CFP 300       |  |
|     |     | 3   | INTELLIGENCE   |               |  |
|     |     | 4   | LOGISTICS AND ADMINISTRATION                                 | CLFCSC Precis |  |
|     |     | 5   | GROUND AND WEATHER   |               |  |
|     |     | 6   | TACTICAL PROTECTION AND SECURITY                             |               |  |
|     |     | 7   | ELECTRONIC WARFARE   |               |  |
|     |     | 8   | PYSCHOLOGICAL OPERATIONS                                     |               |  |
|     |     | 9   | COOPERATION WITH OTHER ELEMENTS                              |               |  |
|     |     | 10  | RECONNAISSANCE   |               |  |
|     |     | 11  | MOVEMENT   |               | Including Tactical<br>and Administrative |
|     |     | 12  | AIR MOBILITY   |               |  |
|     |     | 13  | REAR AREA SECURITY   |               |  |
|     |     | 14  | DECEPTION  |               |  |
|     |     | 15  | LIAISON  |               |  |
|     |     | 16  | GROUPING   |               |  |
|     |     | 17  | AIR SUPPORT  |               |  |
| 16  | 4   | 1   | OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS   | CSC 204       |  |
|     |     | 2   | INTRODUCTION   | CLFCSC Precis |  |
| 17  |     | 3   | ADVANCE  |               |  |
|     |     | 4   | a. General including advance to,<br>and advance in, contact. | CFP 300       |  |
|     |     | 5   | b. Planning and Grouping                                     | throughout    |  |
|     |     | 6   | c. Fire Planning   |               |  |
|     |     | 7   | d. Conduct   |               |  |
|     |     | 8   | e. Meeting Engagement  |               |  |
|     |     | 9   | f. Covering Force Operations                                 |               |  |

.../ 5

| (a) | (b) | (c) | (d)  | (e)  | (f)                |
|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--------------------|
| 18  |     | 3   | ATTACK<br>a. General including fundamentals<br>b. Types and Forms<br>c. Stages<br>d. Planning<br>e. Conduct of Penetration<br>f. Conduct of envelopment<br>g. Infiltration |  | Including diagrams |
| 19  |     | 4   | EXPLOITATION AND PURSUIT<br>a. General<br>b. Conduct   |  |                    |
| 20  |     | 5   | CONDITIONS OF REDUCED VISIBILITY<br>a. General<br>b. Planning<br>c. Conduct  |  |                    |
| 21  |     | 6   | CROSSING AND BREACHING OBSTACLES<br>a. General<br>b. Water Crossings<br><br>c. Breaching Operations<br>d. Traffic Control  | CFP 300<br>ATP 35<br>CLFCSC<br>Precis<br>CSC 204 | Including diagrams |

.../ 6

| (a) | (b) | (c) | (d)  | (e)                                 | (f) |
|-----|-----|-----|--|-------------------------------------|-----|
| 22  |     | 7   | ATTACKING BUILT-UP AREAS<br>a. General<br>b. Planning<br>c. Conduct  | CFP 300<br>CLFCSC Precis<br>CSC 204 |     |
| 23  |     | 8   | ADMINISTRATION<br>a. General<br>b. Advance<br>c. Attack  | CFP 301 (4)<br>CFP 300              |     |
| 24  | 5   | 1   | DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS<br>GENERAL  | CFP 300                             |     |
| 25  |     | 2   | THE DEFENSIVE BATTLE<br>a. General including fundamentals<br>b. Stages<br>c. Layout of the Defensive Area<br>d. The Division/Brigade Group in<br>the Corps Defence   | CFP 300                             |     |
| 26  |     | 3   | PLANNING THE DEFENCE<br>a. General<br>b. The Commander's Appreciation<br>and Plan<br>c. The Importance of Ground<br>d. Concept of Operations<br>e. The Deployment Plan<br>f. The Fire Plan<br>g. The Obstacle Plan<br>h. Blocking and Counter Attack Plans | CFP 300<br>CLFCSC Precis<br>CSC 204 |     |

| (a) | (b) | (c) | (d)  | (e)                                 | (f)                |
|-----|-----|-----|--|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 27  |     | 4   | CONDUCT OF THE DEFENCE<br>a. Covering Force Stage<br>b. Main Defensive Stage<br>c. Counter Attack Stage  | CFP 300<br>CLFCSC Precis<br>CSC 204 |                    |
| 28  |     | 5   | DELAYING OPERATIONS<br>a. General including fundamentals<br>b. Types of Delaying Operations<br>c. Planning Delaying Operations<br>d. Conduct of Delaying Operations                          | CFP 300                             | Including diagrams |
| 29  |     | 6   | WITHDRAWAL<br>a. General including fundamentals<br>b. Planning the withdrawal<br>c. Conduct of the withdrawal  | CFP 300                             | Including diagrams |
| 30  |     | 7   | ASPECTS COMMON TO DELAY AND WITHDRAWAL<br>a. General<br>b. Obstacles and Control of Demolitions<br>c. Traffic Control<br>d. Liaison<br>e. Civil Population<br>f. Protection and Coordination | CFP 300                             |                    |
| 31  |     | 8   | DEFENCE IN BUILT-UP AREAS<br>a. General<br>b. Planning<br>c. Conduct   | CFP 300                             | Including diagrams |

| (a) | (b) | (c) | (d)  | (e)                | (f)          |
|-----|-----|-----|--|--------------------|--------------|
| 32  | 6   | 1   | SPECIFIC OPERATIONS<br>INTRODUCTION  | CFP 300            |              |
| 33  |     | 2   | AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS  | ATPs 36,<br>37, 38 | Outline only |
| 34  |     | 3   | AIRMOBILE OPERATIONS   | ATP 41             | Outline only |
| 35  |     | 4   | ENCIRCLED FORCES   | CFP 300            |              |
| 36  |     | 5   | RELIEF OPERATIONS<br>a. General<br>b. Types<br>c. Relief in Place<br>d. Passage of lines - Forward and Rear<br>e. Command and Control<br>f. Administration | CFP 300            |              |
| 37  | 7   |     | TACTICAL NUCLEAR OPERATIONS  |                    |              |
|     |     | 1   | INTRODUCTION   |                    |              |
| 38  |     | 2   | NUCLEAR EFFECTS AND SUPPORT  |                    |              |
| 39  |     | 3   | PLANNING AND REQUESTS  |                    |              |
| 40  |     | 4   | EMPLOYMENT   |                    |              |

-9-

ANNEX A - LIST OF RELEVANT STANAGS  
ANNEX B - DIVISION/BRIGADE GROUP BATTLE PROCEDURE  
ANNEX C - SUPPORTING AND FOLLOW-ON PUBLICATIONS

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP (301(1) (DLA)

19 Feb 79

DLP<sup>4</sup>

CFP 301(1) - ARMY FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
WRITING PLAN  
DLA COMMENTS

Ref: A. 2910-CFB 301(1) (DLP) 9 Feb 79

1. The writing plan at Ref has been reviewed by DLA staff and the following general comments are offered:

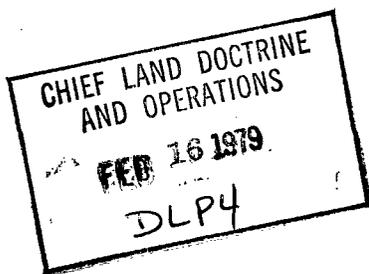
a. In the writing plan, tactical aviation and tactical air are identified appropriately, however, in most instances involving air related matters, Reference Document information is not included. To do his job properly, the author will be required to review at least the following doctrine documents:

- (1) CFP 311 series (10TAG/FMC) doctrine manuals on AIR/AVN units and formations in battle,
- (2) CFP 283, Vols 1 and 2 Aerospace Doctrine, and
- (3) DCDS Land Forces Combat Development Study-Air Support to Canadian Land Forces- 1986-95 (draft).

2. It should be noted that CFP 283 is currently under revision and care should be taken to ensure that the most up-to-date draft is obtained from AirCom.

P.E. ARGUE/LCOL/DLA/cf

  
P.E. Argue  
LCol  
DLA  
2-7471



MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301(1) (D Log Ops)

15 Feb 79

~~DLP~~

CFP 301(1) - WRITING PLAN

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) 9 Feb 79

1. The writing plan attached to Ref A seems coherent and comprehensive. We are quite interested in reviewing the eventual drafts produced.
2. As the terminology is to be in accordance with CFP 121(4) (now AAP-6) and The Concise Oxford Dictionary, might special attention please be given to the terms, "administration", "combat service support" and "logistics".

DGSS has commented  
on this point.

C.S. Read  
Col  
D Log Ops  
6-0551

NNNNVVVV;; :)?318 WGA043 UU

RR ~~XXXX~~ WC

DE RCCPG 0017 0471650

ZNR UUUUU

047 17 33 '79

R 152015Z FEB 79

FM CLFCSC KINGSTON

TO NDHQ OTTAWA

BT

UNCLAS TRG 1032

FOR DLP

SUBJ: CFP 301(1) WRITING PLAN

REF: A. 2910-CFP 301(1)(DLP)

B. TELECON ALLAN/ROY 15 FEB 79

THE WRITING PLAN AT REF A IS SUPPORTED PROVIDED THE ASPECT DISCUSSED

AT REF B IS IMPLEMENTED

*i.e. that the changes explained in Ref A are made and that*

BT

EO017

*(3) DLP.4. I don't believe the manual reflect throughout that the two conditions of "pre-nuclear" and "nuclear" are complementary with Canadian forces in the high intensity battlefield to be so employed in pre-nuclear conditions ~~so that they are to~~ be able to cope with nuclear conditions without any significant changes in operational procedures.*

*that this can be stated  
the W.P. CLFCSC  
can make comments on  
the W.P. if applicable.*

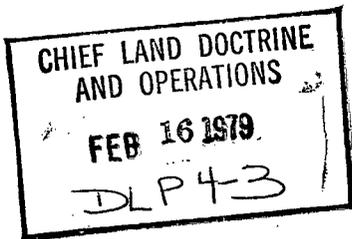
CHIEF LAND DOCTRINE  
AND OPERATIONS  
FEB 16 1979  
DLP4

DLP4

(2) DLP 4-3

*For your file or  
return to ref A.*

*Pal  
DLP4  
19 Feb 79*



MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301(1) (DLES)

14 Feb 79

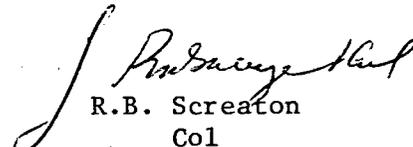
Distribution List

CFP 301(1) ARMY FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
WRITING PLAN - COMMENTS

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP) 9 Feb 79

1. The writing plan as prepared by the author is acceptable with one exception:

"In Serial 3, Section 2 under content, sub para d. Maintenance" It is recommended that the term "Service Support" replace the term "maintenance" since the latter is now more commonly associated with materiel maintenance.

  
R.B. Sreaton  
Col  
DLES  
2-3887

DISTRIBUTION LIST

Action                      Information

→ DLP 4-3                      DGLEM  
D Log Ops

~~2910-CFP 301(1)~~ (DLP)  
2910-CFP 301-1

National Defence Headquarters  
101 Colonel By Drive  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0K2

9 February 1979

### Distribution List

CFP 301(1) - ARMY FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
WRITING PLAN  
REQUEST FOR COMMENTS

Reference: A. 2910-2 (DCDS) 4 July 1978 (NDHQ INSTR DCDS  
7/78 - LAND FORCE DOCTRINE)

1. Contract arrangements have now been completed by FMC HQ with LCol (retd) W.E.J. Hutchinson to produce CFP 301(1). The official start date of the contract is 30 January 1979.

2. The aim and scope detailed for this manual are:

a. Aim. The aim of this manual is to present the tactical fundamentals and techniques necessary to conduct operations of war at the division and brigade group levels. It will provide guidance for study and training.

b. Scope.

(1) This manual places the formations discussed within the context of a deployed corps conducting high intensity operations against a sophisticated enemy in a European environment.

(2) The material covered in this manual generally applies equally in pre-nuclear or nuclear battle. Where the employment of nuclear weapons may have a distinct influence on a fundamental or technique this will be so noted.

(3) The manual will cover:

(a) the outline organization of the division and brigade group;

(b) the role and capabilities;

(c) command and control; and

(d) the tactical handling of the formation in all phases of war.

.../2

- 2 -

- (4) The manual is based on the principles and precepts stated in CFP 300 - The Conduct of Land Operations. The details of unit level tactics are contained in the appropriate arms manuals of this series.
  - (5) Terminology used is in accordance with CFP 121(4) - NATO Glossary of Terms and Definitions and the Concise Oxford Dictionary.
3. Attached as Annex A is the initial draft of the writing plan as produced by the author.
  4. The manual is to be based on the capstone manual CFP 300 - Conduct of Land Operations. A major supporting document will be CFP 303(1) - War Establishments and Equipment Data - the draft of which is in the final stages of the approval process with CFCSC, CLFCSC and FMC HQ. The author will use the 1978 Third Edition CFCSC Manuals 201, 202, 203, 204 and 205 and the CLFCSC Course 7901 and 7802 precis.
  5. From initial review of the writing plan it is intended to ask the author to consider the following points:
    - a. inclusion of a chapter at the start of the Manual which would describe the battlefield and anticipated pattern of battle;
    - b. inclusion of sections on brigade headquarters and staff operations;
    - c. amendment to or elimination of the chapter on Constant Factors in Combat since these are covered in some detail in CFP 300. In any event, this chapter should not be a repetition of material in CFP 300 or ATP 35; and
    - d. placement of the chapter on tactical nuclear operations immediately following the chapters on offensive and defensive operations.
  6. The author will be provided with all direction affecting the manual as is determined by the Army Doctrine and Tactics Board. Authority will be requested to have the author attend the April meeting of the Combat Development Committee during discussion of the item on concept of defensive operations.

.../3

- 3 -

7. Copies of all drafts will be circulated for comment when received from the author.

8. Addressees who are Primary or Secondary Agencies as per reference A, are requested to forward comments on the attached writing plan to NDHQ attention Director Land Plans by 28 February 1979.

*P. A. Roy LCol*  
for J.K. Dangerfield  
Colonel  
Director Land Plans  
for Chief of the Defence Staff

DISTRIBUTION LIST

External

Headquarters Mobile Command  
Canadian Forces Command and Staff College  
Canadian Land Forces Command and Staff College

LCol (Retd) W.E.J. Hutchinson, 203 1610 Jubilee Avenue,  
Victoria, B.C. V8R 4N3

Internal

DGMAP (Attn: D Log Ops)  
Surgeon General  
DGME0  
DGCEO  
DGIS  
DGLEM  
DGRET  
DGSS  
DGT  
DLO (D Inf)  
DLP (D Armd)  
DLR (D Arty)  
DLA  
DLOR

P.A. Roy, LCol/2-8550/sr



Canadian Armed Forces / Forces armées canadiennes  
Mobile Command / Force mobile

NORMS/SGDDN 3-2-5  
Order to / mis à ..... DLP-4

CHIEF LAND DOCTRINE  
AND OPERATIONS  
FEB 13 1979

MC 2910-CFP 301(1)  
FEB 12 1979  
File No 5923-1000  
Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, Québec  
J3Y 5T5  
Charged to / Chargé à ..... LP  
Feb 79

Distribution List

PERSONAL SERVICE CONTRACT - LCOL (RET)  
W.E. HUTCHINSON CD

Reference: A. 5923-1000 (DPRC 3) dated 28 Nov 78

As requested in Reference A a copy of LCol Hutchinson's signed contract is forwarded herewith.

*[Signature]*  
W.B. Vernon  
Lieutenant-Colonel  
Senior Staff Officer CD Coordination  
for Commander

Enclosures

DISTRIBUTION LIST

| <u>Action</u>      | <u>Information</u>  |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| <u>External</u>    | <u>External</u>     |
| NDHQ Ottawa - DPRC | NDHQ Ottawa - DLP 4 |
|                    | <u>Internal</u>     |
|                    | SSO Fin             |

② DLP 4-3  
1. Noted. Please file.  
2. Odd that no one in the chain, including LCol Hutchinson, noted that his name is spelled incorrectly on page 1.  
P.R.  
DLP 4  
13 Feb 79

③  
1. Noted.  
2. TB approval not required. Payable has been the had further information on per see contract is contained on 5923-1000  
15 Feb 79

3  
2  
905

Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, Que  
J3Y 5T5

27 January 1979

LCol (Ret) WEJ Hutchison  
1610 Jubilee Ave, Apt 203  
Victoria, BC  
V8R 4N8

Dear Lieutenant Colonel Hutchison,

The purpose of this letter is to formalize the previous negotiations for a contractual agreement with the Department of National Defence.

Your contract for service with the Department is for the production of the doctrinal manual: "CFP 300(1) Mechanized Formations in Battle". The aim and scope of the publication are set out in the annex to this letter.

Barring unforeseen circumstances, completion of the project shall be approximately eight months from the date of your acceptance of the contract. During this time, progress payments shall be made as each stage in the development of the project is completed. The stages and estimated time required to reach each is summarized hereunder:

a. Stage 1

- (1) Basic research - 20 days; and
- (2) Produce and discuss the writing plan - 5 days.

b. Stage 2

- (1) Writing and typing first draft and preparing draft graphics and artwork - 55 days; and
- (2) Submit first draft to Commander, FMC HQ, attention: Staff Officer Doctrine Coordination, for inspection. (Inspection will require approximately six weeks after which it will be returned with comments and recommendations as deemed appropriate).

c. Stage 3. Review comments and recommendations, produce final draft and return to Mobile Command Headquarters for final inspection - 30 days.

The total value of the contract is \$9,900. The basis of the contract is a per diem fee of \$90 per day. Payments will be made on completion of each of the three stages based on a per diem rate of

.../2

Stage 1 - \$ 2000  
Stage 2 - 4400  
Stage 3 - 2400  
Final - 1100

- 2 -

\$80. The remainder, \$1,100, will be paid after final acceptance of your revised draft by NDHQ. Invoices should be prepared in triplicate upon completion of each stage and submitted to Mobile Command Headquarters for the attention of the Staff Officer, Doctrine Coordination.

The contract author will be responsible for any and all expenses related to travel, and assistance of a clerical, typing or research nature.

You are requested to indicate your agreement to undertake this contract of service by signing the duplicate copy of this letter and returning it to the undersigned.

It would be appreciated if you could reply within 14 days.

Yours truly,



J.T.F.A. Liston  
Colonel

DCOS Combat Development and Training Development  
for Commander

I agree in all respect with the terms  
of the contract described above.

30 Jan 79  
(Date)

W. Hutchinson  
(Signature)

ANNEX A  
TO DO LETTER  
DATED 22 JAN 79

## INTRODUCTION

### AIM

The aim of this manual is to present the tactical fundamentals and techniques necessary to conduct operations of war at the divisional and brigade group levels. It will provide guidance for study and training.

### SCOPE

This manual places the formations discussed within the context of deployed corps conducting high intensity operations against a sophisticated enemy in a European environment.

2. The material covered in this manual generally applies equally in pre-nuclear or nuclear battle. Where the employment of nuclear weapons may have a distinct influence on a fundamental or technique this will be so noted.
3. The manual will cover:
  - a. the outline organization of the division and brigade group;
  - b. the role and capabilities;
  - c. command and control; and
  - d. the tactical handling of the formations in all phases of war.
4. The manual is based on the principles and precepts stated in CFP 300 - The Conduct of Land Operations. The details of unit level tactics are contained in the appropriate arms manuals of this series.
5. Terminology used is in accordance with CFP 121(4) - NATO Glossary of Terms and Definitions and the Concise Oxford Dictionary.

PA - 2910 - CFP 301(1)

National Defence / Défense nationale

5923-1000 (DPRC 3)

2910-0057  
2910-CFP 301(1)

National Defence Headquarters  
101 Colonel By Drive  
Ottawa  
K1A 0K2

COA TD 30/11  
-----  
-----  
-----  
-----

28 November, 1978

Mobile Command  
St Hubert, PQ  
J3Y 5T5

Attention: Senior Staff Officer Coordination

AUTHORIZATION FOR PERSONAL SERVICE CONTRACT

Reference: A. FMC 2910 0057 over 2910-CFP 301(1) (Doc) dated 14 Nov 78

1. The ADM(Per) has approved your request to enter into a personal service contract with LCol Hutchinson for the production of the doctrinal manual CFP 301(1) Mechanized Formations in Battle.
2. It would be appreciated if a copy of the signed contract could be forwarded to NDHQ (Atten: DPRC).

J.P. Peckham  
Director Personnel Requirements and Control  
for Chief of the Defence Staff

Notes: DCPA has seen  
P

DLP 4-3  
2-8550

MAN 25 1979

Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, Que  
J3Y 5T5

27 January 1979

LCol (Ret) WEJ Hutchison  
1610 Jubilee Ave, Apt 203  
Victoria, BC  
V8R 4N8

Dear Lieutenant Colonel Hutchison,

The purpose of this letter is to formalize the previous negotiations for a contractual agreement with the Department of National Defence.

Your contract for service with the Department is for the production of the doctrinal manual: "CFP 300(1) Mechanized Formations in Battle". The aim and scope of the publication are set out in the annex to this letter. 301 (i)

Barring unforeseen circumstances, completion of the project shall be approximately eight months from the date of your acceptance of the contract. During this time, progress payments shall be made as each stage in the development of the project is completed. The stages and estimated time required to reach each is summarized hereunder:

a. Stage 1

- (1) Basic research - 20 days; and
- (2) Produce and discuss the writing plan - 5 days.

b. Stage 2

- (1) Writing and typing first draft and preparing draft graphics and artwork - 55 days; and
- (2) Submit first draft to Commander, FMC HQ, attention: Staff Officer Doctrine Coordination, for inspection. (Inspection will require approximately six weeks after which it will be returned with comments and recommendations as deemed appropriate).

c. Stage 3. Review comments and recommendations, produce final draft and return to Mobile Command Headquarters for final inspection - 30 days.

The total value of the contract is \$9,900. The basis of the contract is a per diem fee of \$90 per day. Payments will be made on completion of each of the three stages based on a per diem rate of

.../2

- 2 -

\$80. The remainder, \$1,100, will be paid after final acceptance of your revised draft by NDHQ. Invoices should be prepared in triplicate upon completion of each stage and submitted to Mobile Command Headquarters for the attention of the Staff Officer, Doctrine Coordination.

The contract author will be responsible for any and all expenses related to travel, and assistance of a clerical, typing or research nature.

You are requested to indicate your agreement to undertake this contract of service by signing the duplicate copy of this letter and returning it to the undersigned.

It would be appreciated if you could reply within 14 days.

Yours truly,



J.T.F.A. Liston  
Colonel

DCOS Combat Development and Training Development  
for Commander

I agree in all respect with the terms  
of the contract described above.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Date)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

ANNEX A  
TO DO LETTER  
DATED 22 JAN 79

## INTRODUCTION

### AIM

The aim of this manual is to present the tactical fundamentals and techniques necessary to conduct operations of war at the divisional and brigade group levels. It will provide guidance for study and training.

### SCOPE

This manual places the formations discussed within the context of deployed corps conducting high intensity operations against a sophisticated enemy in a European environment.

2. The material covered in this manual generally applies equally in pre-nuclear or nuclear battle. Where the employment of nuclear weapons may have a distinct influence on a fundamental or technique this will be so noted.

3. The manual will cover:

- a. the outline organization of the division and brigade group;
- b. the role and capabilities;
- c. command and control; and
- d. the tactical handling of the formations in all phases of war.

4. The manual is based on the principles and precepts stated in CFP 300 - The Conduct of Land Operations. The details of unit level tactics are contained in the appropriate arms manuals of this series.

5. Terminology used is in accordance with CFP 121(4) - NATO Glossary of Terms and Definitions and the Concise Oxford Dictionary.

PA

2910 - CFP 301-1

~~2900-2~~ (DLP)

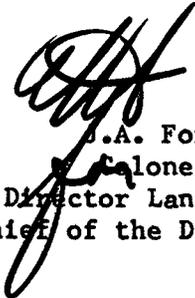
National Defence Headquarters  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0K2

26 April 1976

Distribution List

REDRAFT - DEFENCE - CFP 301(1)

1. Enclosed is a copy of the second draft of the defensive operations chapter of CFP 301(1) Formations in Battle. The draft was prepared at HQ with a significant DLP input.
2. The draft has also been staffed at NDHQ and the copy being forwarded includes comments made during this process. It represents the latest tactical doctrine for defence and it may be useful in the preparation of instruction.
3. If there are any comments on the chapter they would be appreciated in due course.

  
J.A. Fox  
Colonel  
Director Land Plans  
for Chief of the Defence Staff

Enclosure

DISTRIBUTION LIST

CFC Toronto (Attention: Director of Land Studies)  
CLFCSC Kingston (Attention: SSO and D)

24

2910 CFP 301-1

~~2910 CFP 301 (1)~~

National Defence Headquarters  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0K2

19 April, 1976

(1)

Major F.Q. Graham, CD  
Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, PQ  
J3Y 5T5

Dear

Sorry to be so long with my comments on the redraft of the defence chapter to CFP 301 (1) but it had a low priority in the struggle for my time - pleasant visits to 4CMBG, TEAL and 2 Patricia's celebrations taking precedence.

However, the arrival of the annex on the defence appreciation yesterday prompted some action. Actually - because of my bias - I had the draft chapter read by two other officers who had no prior knowledge and as you can see it fared quite well. Other than some minor grammatical corrections and clarifications the only real hang up is the unresolved problem of how to geographically describe the battle area. CLFCSC and I don't like the NATO (ATP 35) nomenclature and I have told NATO so in our comments on that manual. For now, I do think we can live with it so this should not delay the production of follow-on manuals like the Armd Regt or Inf Bn.

My comments are in reddish pen throughout and if you have any questions call me at your convenience.

Keep up the good work -

Yours *ajg*

*H.*

*(2) PA*  
*DLR4*  
*22 apr 76*

2910 - CFP 301-1

NA

2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP)

National Defence Headquarters  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0K2

12 September 1975

Headquarters  
Mobile Command  
St Hubert, Que  
J3Y 5T5

Attention: SSO (Doc)

COMMENTS - CFP 301(1) DRAFT - LAND FORMATIONS IN BATTLE

Reference: A. FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DOC) dated 21 April 1975

1. As requested in Reference A, attached are comments on this draft manual from the following NDHQ Directorates:
  - a. DLR/DARTY
  - b. DMEP
  - c. DCEO
  - d. DMPPP
2. Informal observations from this Directorate were passed by hand to your representative on 10 September 1975.
3. The general comment of all NDHQ agencies that this manual should discuss formation operations and not concentrate on the brigade group is strongly supported. It is considered that this manual should state principles, the major planning factors and broad techniques applicable at any formation level from brigade to corps.
4. It is assumed that the next draft of this manual will include the terminology agreed at the meeting of 10 September 1975.
5. No comment is made at this time on the proposed distribution.

.../2

- 2 -

6. Although this draft has received a great deal of criticism in detail, the need for such a publication is recognized and it has the potential to be a most useful publication.

  
J.A. Fox  
Colonel  
Director Land Plans  
for Chief of the Defence Staff

Attachments: 4

W.E.J. Hutchinson, LCol, 2-8550/jem

FOR COMMUNICATIONS USE / À L'USAGE DE L'ENTREPRISE DES COMMUNICATIONS/TRANSMISSIONS NUMBER-NUMÉRO

P.A.

|                                      |                                  |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| PRECEDENCE-ACTION<br>PRIORITÉ-ACTION | PRECEDENCE-INFO<br>PRIORITÉ-INFO | DATE-TIME GROUP<br>GROUPE DATE-HEURE | MESSAGE INSTRUCTIONS<br>INSTRUCTIONS (MESSAGE) |
| <b>ROUTINE</b>                       | DEFERRED-DIFFÉRÉ                 | <b>022032Z SEP 75</b>                |  |

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| FROM DE<br><b>NDHQ OTTAWA</b>  | PREFIX-PRÉFIXE<br><br>GR  |
| TO-À<br><b>FMCHQ ST HUBERT</b> | SECURITY CLASSIFICATION<br>COTE DE SÉCURITÉ<br><br><b>UNCLAS</b>      |
| INFO                           | ORIGINATOR'S NUMBER<br>NUMÉRO DE L'EXPÉDITEUR<br><br><b>DLP 21794</b> |

**FOR SSO DOCTRINE**

**SUBJECT: COMMENTS CFP 301(1)**

**REF: A, FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) DOC 21 APR 75**

- 1. REGRET CANNOT PROVIDE COORD COMMENTS AS REQUESTED IN REF A BY 25 AUG 75**
- 2. LEAVE ETC HAS INTERFERED. EXPECT TO SEND COMMENTS NO LATER THAN 5 SEP 75**

|   |   |   |                  |                    |      |            |                |                    |   |
|---|---|---|------------------|--------------------|------|------------|----------------|--------------------|---|
| PAGE                                      | REFERS TO MESSAGE-RÉFÈRE AU MESSAGE   | DRAFTER'S NAME<br>NOM DU RÉDACTEUR      | OFFICE<br>BUREAU | TEL.-TEL.          |      |            |                |                    |   |
| OF DE                                     | CLASSIFIED-CLASSIFIÉ YES OUI <input type="checkbox"/> NO NON <input type="checkbox"/> | <b>W.E. Hutchinson, LCol DLP 2-7907</b> |                  |                    |      |            |                |                    |   |
| FOR OPR'S USE<br>À L'USAGE DE L'OPÉRATEUR | DATE  | TIME HEURE                              | SYSTEM SYSTÈME   | OPERATOR OPÉRATEUR | DATE | TIME HEURE | SYSTEM SYSTÈME | OPERATOR OPÉRATEUR | SIGNATURE OF RELEASING OFFICER<br>SIGNATURE DE L'OFFICIER APPROBATEUR |
| <b>R</b>                                  |   |   |                  | <b>T</b>           |      |            |                |                    | <b>J.A. FOX COL DLP</b>   |

2910-eFP301-1

MEMORANDUM

~~2910-1~~ (DCEO)

Aug 75

DLP

DGCEO'S COMMENTS ON CFP 301(1) (DRAFT)  
LAND FMN IN BATTLE

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP) 22 May 75

Find attached at Annex A subject comments requested at ref A.



J.G. Thériault  
Maj  
A/DCEO  
5-8742

Attachment

JG Thériault Maj/5-8742/jf

ANNEX A  
TO 2910-1 (DCEO)  
DATED AUG 75

CFP 301(1) LAND FORMATION IN BATTLE

| <u>Serial</u> | <u>Reference</u> | <u>Comments</u>  | <u>Opinion</u> | <u>Decision</u> |
|---------------|------------------|--|----------------|-----------------|
| 1             | para 204.1       | We should revert to the old formula of arms and services rather than cbt arms, arms and services. It can be argued that even armour and infantry are supporting arms in some ops; in any case, all arms are mutually supporting.   |                |                 |
| 2             | figure 2-1       | TACP is part and parcel of bde gp HQ and Sig Sqn and should not appear separately since none of the other functions of the bde HQ do appear in the block diagrams.   |                |                 |
| 3             | para 224.1       | Rewrite: "The primary role of signals is to provide and operate operational and administrative command and control facilities down to unit HQ level. These facilities can include TADPS, secure and unsecure voice radio nets in HF, VHF and UHF bands, RTT, RR and landline cets for TT and telephone, facsimile and comcen facilities. Signals also provide for the administration and defence of fmn HQ's. The fmn signal officer exercises technical control over all fmn comms and conducts EW as directed by higher fmn. |                |                 |
| 4             | para 224.2.a     | Rewrite: " <u>Flexibility</u> of comms systems implies the ability to adapt to the bde rate of movement, regrouping and dispersal to adjust to sudden changes in ops and tac msn".   |                |                 |
| 5             | para 224.2.b     | Rewrite last phrase: "... circumstances. Implicit is the ability to withstand en action and countermeasures".  |                |                 |
| 6             | para 225         | Rewrite: "The operational and adm comm systems, the administration and the defence of the bde gp HQ are provided by the HQ and Sig Sqn. The signal sqn proper is made up of a CP, a radio tp, a trunk system tp, a support tp and a D&E platoon."  |                |                 |
| 7             | para 301.1       | Phrase 2: "A comd, therefore is alone responsible for producing a plan, <u>leading</u> and directing his men in battle".   |                |                 |

.../2

| <u>Serial</u> | <u>Reference</u> | <u>Comments</u>  | <u>Opinion</u> | <u>Decision</u> |
|---------------|------------------|--|----------------|-----------------|
| 8             | para 302         | With the staff org outlined, we have gone away from the old British ways. We should therefore make a definite break and make the deputy commander into what he will become in all but name, i.e., the Chief of Staff.  |                |                 |
| 9             | para 306.5       | See my comments above on the DComd. This branch primacy thing made sense in our former organization but now all it does is create problems when the personalities are not right. We should do away with it as we have done away with the former brigade major. |                |                 |
| 10            | para 307.2       | The posn of the OC MC pl should I think be reflected under the SSO Adm rather than the SSO Ops. After all the SSO Adm does prepare move plans, tfo plans, etc and deals with disciplinary matters.   |                |                 |
| 11            | para 308.2       | I fail to understand why only one officer deals with A matters and 4 deal with Q matters. These posns should be balanced out. Further, who handles now the jobs that used to be done by BEME and BOO?  |                |                 |
| 12            | para 309         | Rewrite: "The bde gp HQ will normally consist of a main HQ, Rover group (tac HQ), step up gp and a comcen. An altn HQ will always be designated and provided with the necessary facilities to enable it to function effectively.                               |                |                 |
| 13            | para 310.2       | Should be retitled - Rover gp (tac HQ).  |                |                 |
| 14            | para 314.b       | The SSO Ops in consultation with SSO Adm and fm sig offr chooses the new location including an altn posn and briefs the recce offr.  |                |                 |
| 15            | para 424         | This paragraph must include a reference to the comms sp provided by the sig sqn and include:<br>a. radio systems with radio diagrams<br>b. trunk facilities with trunk diagrams<br>c. Comcen facilities including SDS  |                |                 |
| 16            | para 425.1       | Last phrase: "The aim of EW....."  |                |                 |
| 17            | Chapter 13       | There is no ref to the procedure for the release of G controlled stores.   |                |                 |
| 18            | fig 13-1         | TACP should appear under SSO Ops.  |                |                 |

| <u>Serial</u> | <u>Reference</u>   | <u>Comments</u>  | <u>Opinion</u> | <u>Decision</u> |
|---------------|--|--|----------------|-----------------|
| 19            | fig 13-1   | The HQ and sig sqn means staff and signals; therefore the block at upper right hand should be titled only: "sig sqn".<br>Comm sec is part of sqn HQ. |                |                 |
| 20            | Ann A, para 18   | Why not return to <u>verbal orders</u> rather than <u>oral orders</u> ?  |                |                 |
| 21            | Appx 1, Ann A  | bde O gp should include fmn Sig Offr.  |                |                 |
| 22            | Appx 1, Ann A  | all refs to other than bde level groups are superfluous in this book.  |                |                 |
| 23            | Appx 3, Ann A  | should be at bde level; this is a fmn level pamphlet   |                |                 |
| 24            | Appx 4, Ann A<br>Appx 5, Ann A                                   | same remark as Serial 22   |                |                 |
| 25            | Appx 2, Ann B<br>Appx 3, Ann B<br>Appx 4, Ann B<br>Appx 5, Ann B | Same remark as Serial 23   |                |                 |

NNNNVV CLA376 WGA121 UU

RR RCCWC

DE RCCPG 96 1841947

ZNR UUUUU

R 03191Z JUL 75

FM CLFCSC KINGSTON

TO RCCSC/FMCHQ ST HUBERT

INFO RCCWC/NDHQ OTTAWA

BT

UNCLAS TRG 1117 NDHQ FOR DGRET AND DLP FMC FOR  
SSO DOCTRINE

SUBJECT: CFP 301(1) DRAFT

REF: FMC 2910-CFP 301(1) (DOC) 21 APR 75

1. FOL QUESTIONS ARE RAISED BEFORE COMMENTS CAN BE PRET:

A. WHAT PAMPHLETS WILL CFP 301(1) REPLACE? IN PARTICULAR WHAT  
EFFECT DOES THIS HAVE ON DOCTRINE IN CFPS 165 301(2) AND 301(3)? IS  
THIS PUBLICATION TO BECOME THE LAND FORCE BIBLE FOR OPERATIONS OF WAR?

B. WHAT IS THE OVERALL PLAN TO SORT OUT LAND FORCE DOCTRINE IN  
OUR PUBLICATIONS? DURING LCOL COLLETT'S VISIT TO CLFCSC IN SPRING  
1975 HE LEFT THE VERY DEFINITE IMPRESSION THAT NDHQ AND DLP IN  
PARTICULAR WOULD ATTEMPT TO RATIONALIZE THIS PROBLEM SO THAT  
INDIVIDUALS UNITS SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES USED THE SAME DOCTRINAL  
BACKGROUND. IN THE MEANTIME CERTAIN EXISTING PAMPHLETS WERE TO BE

2910-~~CFP 301~~  
CFP 301-1

JUL 3 22

27 75

DGRET  
DLP

Referred to... 3-2  
JUL 8 1975  
PCz No. ~~7670-2027~~  
Chg'd to...

PA

0

PA [REDACTED] RCCPG 96 UNCLAS

EARMARKED AS AUTHORITATIVE REFERENCES AND IF NECESSARY REISSUED  
UNDER A CANADIAN TITLE IF OF FOREIGN ORIGIN. SINCE THAT TIME A SPATE OF  
PAMPHLETS HAVE BEEN RECEIVED FOR COMMENT WITH NO CLEAR INDICATION OF  
THE BACKGROUND

2. IN GEN THIS PAMPHLET LOOKS LIKE IT COULD BE VERY USEFUL WITH  
SOME ADDITIONAL POLISHING

BT

② DPED

For info.  
R.D. Rowson Capt  
4 Jul 75

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301(2) (DMEP)

19 Jun 75

DLP

CFP 301(1) DRAFT - LAND FORMATIONS  
IN BATTLE

Reference: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP) 22 May 75

1. The subject draft publication has been reviewed as requested in Reference A.

2. General comments on the draft are as follows:

a. TITLE. The title of the publication Land Formations in Battle is somewhat misleading. It infers that all land formations are being discussed, yet the introduction states that the manual is only concerned with the employment of brigade groups in the Canadian Forces.

b. USE OF THIS PUBLICATION AS A BASIS OF ALL OTHER LAND AND TACTICAL AIR PUBLICATIONS.

To use this publication as a base on which all other land and tactical air publications will be established will create many difficulties for the combat support arms and the combat service support branches. To discuss engineer, artillery, tactical air, communications and logistics in the absence of a concept of operations and doctrine above brigade level is impracticable. All of these functions require concepts of operations at a higher level than brigade before detailed doctrine at the brigade and unit level can be developed. It is suggested that a publication similar to the draft CFP 301(1) but written at divisional level should be the starting point. From this publication could come a publication on brigade groups - both mechanized and standard. From these manuals one could produce "corps" or "branch" doctrine which as stated, must relate back to a divisional concept.

3. Specific comments on the draft manual as written are provided at Annexures A, B and C. These comments relate to sections and paragraphs

.../2

- 2 -

where engineer matters are discussed. Annex A is a suggested rewrite of Chapter 2, Section 7. Annex B is a suggested re-write of Chapter 4. Section 5 and Annex C contains minor amendments.



A.J. Tattersall  
LCol  
DMEP  
2-8385

REWRITE OF CHAPTER 2 SECTION 7

FIELD ENGINEERS

Section 7 - Field Engineers

222. Role and Functions

1. The primary role of field engineers in the combat zone is to assist brigades to live, move and fight and to deny this same capability to the enemy.
2. The secondary role of the field engineers is to operate as infantry when required in operational emergencies.
3. The functions of field engineers in support of brigades in the combat zone are:
  - a. Maintenance of our own Mobility. This includes route construction and maintenance, obstacle clearance, bridging, assistance during amphibious crossings, construction and maintenance of austere air landing facilities and providing advice to others on the selection of good going areas.
  - b. Reduction of Enemy Mobility. This includes the construction and improvement of obstacles and barriers, demolitions including Atomic Demolition Munitions and assistance in the development of field defences.
  - c. Provision of General Engineer Support. This includes the provision of potable water, advice and assistance in camouflage, concealment and deception, explosive ordnance disposal, shallow water diving operations, denial of materials to the enemy, and provision of basic shelter and utilities.

223. Characteristics of Field Engineers

1. The characteristics of field engineer units are as follows:

a. Flexibility. The flexibility inherent in field engineer units results from:

(1) Training of Personnel. All field engineers are combat trained in addition to their specialist engineer training. Their training qualifies them in field engineering as well as some basic construction trades and specialist equipment operating skills. They are capable of performing in an infantry role in an emergency.

(2) Organization. Engineers are organized to function as basic working groups on a number of minor tasks or grouped together to perform a single major task.

(3) Communications. Good communications down to section level provide the means for adequate control of engineer work and is a prerequisite to rapid redeployment.

b. Mobility. To provide the intimate engineer support required by other arms, engineer units are equipped with vehicles that have a cross country capability comparable to the troops they support.

c. Reliance on Equipment. The use of special equipment ranging from specialist armoured vehicles to earth moving plant such as bulldozers, graders and cranes increases the engineer work capacity out of proportion to their personnel strength.

d. Vulnerability. Most field engineer tasks in support of the brigade are carried out by dismounted troops operating in the forward area. As engineer work parties cannot efficiently work and fight at the same time, protection by combat arms units

- 3 -

will frequently be required. Without such protection the scheduled completion of critical tasks may be delayed because of enemy interference.

e. Skill. The successful and timely completion of engineer tasks plays an important part in the commander's plan. Field engineers are a small group of highly trained men whose skills must not be used on general labour tasks. They should only be employed in an infantry role in emergencies. To gain maximum benefit from the limited number of field engineer personnel they can be used to supervise work parties from other units who are employed on engineer-related tasks.

f. Limitations. Engineers troops have the following limitations:

(1) Reduced Efficiency at Night. Although security is often better, even when equipped with modern night vision aids engineers require considerably more time to complete tasks at night than in daylight.

(2) Limited Material Resources. The amount of organic stores, equipment and plant carried by engineers is limited. Commanders and staff must anticipate the requirement for additional resources well in advance to facilitate prepositioning and dumping.

(3) Rest and Maintenance. Regular rest and equipment maintenance is required to obtain the most from engineer resources.

#### 224. The Field Engineer Squadron

1. The Field Engineer Squadron organic to the brigade is structured to provide limited engineer support. It consists of a headquarters, four field troops, a support troop and an administrative troop.

-- 4 --

2. It is emphasized that the Field Engineer Squadron will not normally be able to execute all the tasks required by brigade units. For this reason it is essential that the brigade group Commander assign priorities of work and set work standards.

3. Larger engineer tasks such as bridging for deliberate river crossing operations and the laying of large tactical minefields would normally be undertaken by divisional or corps engineer units.

REWRITE OF CHAPTER 4  
SECTION 5 - ENGINEER SUPPORT

420. GENERAL

1. The engineer support provided to brigades on a continuous basis by the organic Field Engineer Squadron was discussed in Chapter 2, Section 7. This section will discuss the additional engineer support available to brigades when operating as part of a larger formation.

2. When a Canadian brigade is operating under command of a larger formation, it may receive additional engineer support from that formation (eg. Division) or from a higher formation (eg. Corps).

421. COMMAND AND CONTROL

1. A basic tenet of engineers is that they should be commanded and controlled at the highest practicable level. This centralized control ensures that the execution of engineer tasks is accomplished in the most economical and efficient manner in accordance with priorities established by the supported formation or formations.

2. In certain situations it may be necessary or preferable to decentralize the command of engineer resources while at the same time retaining technical control of the resources so allotted. In the final analysis the best method of command and control will have to be established for each operation during the planning stage.

422. PLANNING ENGINEER OPERATIONS

1. The planning of engineer operations must be carried out by the highest level of engineer command practicable. For this reason, the engineer commander must be fully informed of his commander's intentions concerning future operations. This will enable him to give timely and appropriate advice and to make plans, particularly for the allotment of engineer stores, equipment and plant. In planning he must consult the operations and intelligence staff, the artillery commander,

- 2 -

the counter-attack force commander and commanders of formations or units as appropriate. Similarly, these commanders and staffs must consult with the engineer commander and his staff or, their own engineer adviser when formulating their plans.

2. In his advisory capacity, the engineer commander will keep his commander informed of the technical capabilities of engineers as well as the feasibility of ensuring timely engineer support for the various courses of action contemplated. It is normally necessary to weigh the tactical against the technical advantages and disadvantages of each course open in order to select the one most likely to accomplish the commander's aim.

#### 423. DIVISIONAL ENGINEER SUPPORT

1. When a Canadian brigade is operating under command of an allied division, divisional engineer resources will be available to execute divisional engineer tasks and may also be made available to brigades to supplement their organic Field Engineer Squadron for tasks, outside their immediate capability.

2. The primary task of divisional engineers is to provide direct and intimate support to the division. Tasks beyond the capability of divisional engineers but which are essential to support the division are carried out by Corps or Army engineers.

3. The deployment of divisional engineers in the divisional area will vary with the terrain and type of operation. A number of alternatives are possible as follows:

a. Under Centralized Command, with Areas of Responsibility.

Field Engineer Squadrons remain under command of the Divisional Engineer (CDE). The divisional area is divided into sectors with each Field Engineer Squadron being allotted an area of responsibility within which that unit carries out all engineer tasks.

b. Under Centralized Command, with Task Responsibility.

Again the Field Engineer Squadron remains under command of the CDE. Each unit is allotted responsibility for a major task or group of related tasks in the divisional area.

c. Decentralized in Support of Brigades.

Field Engineer Squadrons are either placed under command of brigades, or in support of brigades while remaining under command of the CDE. In both cases, the CDE exercises technical control.

d. Portion Centralized and Portion Decentralized.

One or more Field Engineer Squadrons are allotted to brigades with the remainder staying under command of the CDE.

4. For independent operations, divisional engineer resources may be placed under command of formations or units.

5. Where specialist support is required (eg. bridgelayers), divisional engineer resources may be placed in support of formations or units for the duration of that particular operation.

424. NON-DIVISIONAL ENGINEER SUPPORT

1. Engineer support beyond divisional level consists of field engineer regiments and specialist units such as engineer support squadrons, armoured engineer regiments, amphibious engineer regiments, survey squadrons and the like.

2. Field engineer regiments are normally employed on tasks essential to the overall higher formation commander's operational plan thus freeing divisional engineers for their primary task, the direct and intimate support of the division.<sup>⑤</sup> These tasks could include the maintenance of MSRs over which the division must pass, major bridging operations in an assault river crossing, laying large minefields in the defence or preliminary demolitions in the withdrawal. Part of the higher

- 4 -

formation field engineer regiments are often placed under command of the CDE for tasks in the forward area which are beyond the capabilities of divisional engineers. Whether or not they are placed under command, all engineer work in the divisional area will be co-ordinated by the CDE for the divisional commander. Although non-divisional field engineer regiments may carry out engineer tasks within brigade boundaries, they would not normally be placed under command or in support of that particular brigade. Control must be retained at the highest practicable level.

3. Armoured engineer regiments are normally deployed forward under command of divisions and are frequently placed in support of brigades, particularly during the advance to assist in the breaching or crossing of obstacles.

4. Amphibious engineer regiments normally are retained under command of the highest tactical commander but are often placed in support of divisions during assault water crossing operations. They would not normally be placed either under command or in support of brigades but rather be in location only.

SUGGESTED MINOR AMENDMENTS

1. Chapter 4 - Section 1  
Paragraph 401. 1. b. - After "... air defence)," insert engineer.
2. Chapter 10 - Section 5
  - a. Paragraph 1018. 3. Add the following sentence to this paragraph: "It is essential that early co-ordination take place between the commander of the counter-attack force and the engineer commander to ensure that counter-attack routes are planned and constructed in the obstacle belts".
  - b. Paragraph 1014. 2.a. The types of minefields listed are incorrect. STANAG 2036 (Edition 3) which Canada has ratified groups "Defensive" and "Barrier" minefields under the new term "TACTICAL MINEFIELDS" which is defined in the STANAG. All other reference to either "Defensive" or "Barrier" minefields in the draft CFP 301(1) should be changed to read "TACTICAL".

RESTRICTED

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301

~~2910-CFP 301~~ (DMPPP 3-2)

30 May 75

Distribution List

CFP 301(1) (DRAFT) -  
LAND FORMATIONS IN BATTLE COMMENTS

Ref: A. 2910-CFP 301(1) (DLP) 22 May 75

1. The subject draft publication has been reviewed with emphasis on Chapter 13, Administration. As a consequence of this review, the following comments are submitted with respect to Chapter 13:

a. General Aspects

- (1) there are several instances throughout the chapter where the terminology used, particularly with respect to the supply function, is outdated. Specific corrective comment is provided below;
- (2) use of the term "branch" to differentiate between the logistic and personnel aspects of the administration function can be confused with the officer classification term "Logistic Branch" and should be avoided. The logistic functions described within Chapter 13 are not synonymous with Logistic Branch functions;
- (3) the principles of administration include that of "Cooperation" which appears to have been replaced within the draft by "Co-ordination". Although this latter aspect is important, it neither implies nor replaces the essential aspects of cooperation which must be retained;
- (4) it is considered that the Administration chapter lacks equal depth of content with the preceding chapters and should include those logistical considerations peculiar to each phase of war.

RESTRICTED

.../ 2

000538

b. Detailed Comments

(1) Section 3, Art 1303:

(a) para 1

- use of the word "stores" is no longer definitive and should be avoided as a generalization if possible. It is preferred that the second sentence read ".... and other equipment and supplies" with "stores" eliminated.
- mention should be made of the quartering function.

(b) para 2

- it is recommended that "subdivision" be substituted for "branch" throughout to avoid comparison to the Logistic Branch.
- to remain consistent with other publications, "materiel" should be used rather than "material" throughout.
- 2b(1) and 2b(2) are now obsolete terms and should be replaced by consumables and equipment respectively.

(c) para 2b(4)

- these aspects are services not materiel needs, hence the word "services" should be added.

(2) Section 3, Art 1305:

(a) para 1

- second sentence should read ".... include ammunition, POL and rations".
- non-consumable materiel does not include ".... stores of all types" as the word stores is now considered synonymous with the term items of supply, which includes consumables.
- unit equipment tables include both consumable and non-consumable items and should not be as a definitive document of solely non-consumables.

(b) para 2b

- "stores function" should read "supply function".

(c) para 2c

- it should be stated that the provision of POL is a supply function.

RESTRICTED

- 3 -

- (d) paras 3 and 4 - the content of these paragraphs are not consistent with the current supply system which does NOT differentiate between "supplies" and "stores". Both aspects are now integral to materiel supply and the responsibility of Supply System. It is therefore recommended that paras 3 and 4 be eliminated with the main aspect of para 3 (rations) being introduced as an additional sub-para of para 2. The draft para 4 should be re-oriented towards non-consumables or the major aspects of the unit equipment spectrum.
- (e) para 5b - this sub-para should include over snow vehicles.
- (f) para 7c - the last sentence of this sub-para is mandatory in intent and is therefore incorrect as doctrine. This sentence must read to the effect that general transport would likely be provided by other than Canadian Sources.
- (g) para 10c - the term base repairs is incorrect. Substitute "Depot" for "Base".
- (h) para 11 - the third sentence of this para is not correct. Equipment beyond unit level repair cannot be set aside as stated, it must be backloaded. Further, replacement equipment will not be issued as indicated but rather only when backloaded beyond the echelon undertaking field level repair.
- (3) Section 4, Art 1309:
- (a) para 2b - service battalions do not have the capability to hold and subsequently supply combat vehicles. This is a third line (mobile base) responsibility with the service battalion only capable of operating the vehicle transit point for B vehicles (Veh RV).
- (b) para 2c - this capability should read "supply of materiel and equipment".

RESTRICTED

.../ 4

000540

RESTRICTED

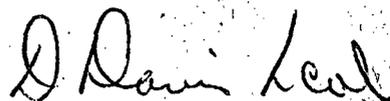
- 4 -

(c) para 2d

- this sub-para should read "technical maintenance, repair and recovery".

(d) para 3d

- reference to supply of combat vehicles must be eliminated while responsibilities for POL and rations should be added. Also, materiel should be used vice stores.



W. J. Yost

for Col  
DMPPP

DISTRIBUTION LIST

Action

DLP 4

Information

DGCEO  
DGME0  
DLR  
DLO

RESTRICTED

000541

MEMORANDUM

2910-CFP 301 (1) (DLP)

22 May 75

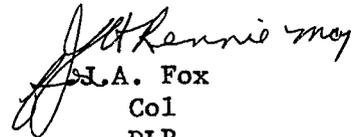
Distribution List

CFP 301 (1) (DRAFT) - LAND FORMATIONS IN BATTLE

Reference: A. FMC 2910-CFP 301 (1) (DOC) 21 Apr 75

1. The subject publication is attached for your review and comments.
2. Unfortunately, the number of copies are extremely limited therefore, you are requested to circulate the attached copy to the next addressee on the list when you have completed your review.
3. You are requested to submit your comments along with the manual as the publication is circulated. Final comments are required to reach DLP 4-3 by 19 Aug 75.

J.H. Rennie, Maj/2-8550/11f

  
J.A. Fox  
Col  
DLP  
2-5436

DISTRIBUTION LIST

DGMAP  
DGCEO  
DLOR (WAR GAMES SECTION)  
DGME0  
DLR  
DLO  
DLP

FILE NUMBER / DOSSIER 2910-CFP 301-1

DEPARTMENT OF NATIONAL DEFENCE  
 MINISTÈRE DE LA DÉFENSE NATIONALE

CANADIAN FORCES PUBLICATIONS  
 OPERATIONS LAND & TACTICAL AIR  
 LAND FORCES FORMATION IN BATTLE

USE INSIDE COVER FOR CROSS REFERENCES  
 POUR INDIQUER UN RENVOI, UTILISER L'INTÉRIEUR DE LA COUVERTURE

| CIRCULATION |                      |         |       | P.A.<br>RANGER |       | B.F.<br>RAPPEL |                   | REGISTRY ONLY<br>DÉPÔT CENTRAL |                         |
|-------------|----------------------|---------|-------|----------------|-------|----------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| TO<br>A     | REMARKS<br>REMARQUES | Date    | Init. | Date           | Init. | Date           | Cancel<br>Annuler | Inspected<br>Inspecté          | Station No.<br>Poste No |
| DLCD 4-2.   | Reg                  | 1-12-90 | S     |                |       |                |                   |                                |                         |
|             |                      |         |       |                |       |                |                   |                                |                         |
|             |                      |         |       |                |       |                |                   |                                |                         |

000543

File.

Draft, 21 Apr 75 produced by FME/AR  
not acceptable to DIR 4

To Restart

  
26 Jan 76

~~2910~~ 2910-CFP 301 (2)

L 2910-CFP 301-2 DDDS-6

29 December, 1971

PA

Headquarters  
Mobile Command  
St Hubert, Que

CFP 301(2)

MECHANIZED DIVISION IN BATTLE

(1)

1. CFP 301(2) has been forwarded to the Printing Unit at Cartier Square Ottawa for <sup>re</sup>printing in 250 copies and delivery to Canadian Forces Publication Depot.
2. Target date for this publication is 21 Jan 72.
3. Enquiries regarding printing or delivery of this publication are to be made to DDDS-6 local 2-8445, Mrs Ricard.

*P.R. Coveney*  
P.R. Coveney  
DDDS-6

c.c. DT 4-5  
DLODR *[Signature]*

→ DLODR 2-2

(2)  
noted.  
PA.

*[Signature]*  
DLODR 2-2  
6 Jan 71

DEPARTMENT OF NATIONAL DEFENCE



MINISTÈRE DE LA DÉFENSE NATIONALE

FMC 2900-9 DOC

Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, Que

20 Apr 71

|                       |
|-----------------------|
| REGISTRATION DIVISION |
| REGISTRY              |
| Registered to: DGLF   |
| APR 20 1971           |
| File No: V2910-CFP301 |
| Classified: _____     |

Distribution List

REVISED DISTRIBUTION LIST  
CFP 301(3) LIGHT FORMATIONS IN BATTLE

(1)

References: A. FMC 2900-9 REQTS 31 Aug 70

B. S 2910-CFP 301-3 (CFHQ PUBS) 24 Mar 71

- Attached is a revised copy of Annex A to Reference A, the review of which was prompted by the receipt of Reference B.
- Amend all copies accordingly.

*A.F. Charters*  
A.F. Charters  
Captain  
for Commander Mobile Command

Distribution List

|               |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|
| <u>Action</u> | <u>Information</u> |
| CFHQ: DORL 2  | CFHQ: PUBS         |

(2)

q  
REFERENCED LETTER PLACED ON  
Ref A. V. 2910-CFP301 TO file  
AND PASSED TO DORL 2

- Spoke with Mr Bleight at CFHQ Pubs.
- He will action in accordance with revised distribution list.
- PA.

*Officer Maj*  
DORL 2-2  
22 Apr 71

RESTRICTED

Annex A  
 to FMC 2900-9 REQTS  
 dated 20 Apr 70

INITIAL DISTRIBUTION

CFP 301(3)

LIGHT FORMATIONS IN BATTLE

| FORMATION/UNIT                       | NUMBER OF COPIES |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| <u>CFS. SAINT JOHN'S:</u>            |                  |
| 1. Nfld Mil Dist HQ, Saint John's    | 1                |
| 2. 56 Fd Sqn, Saint John's           | 1                |
| 3. R Nfld R, Saint John's            | 8                |
| 4. Nfld Mil Svc Bn, Saint John's     | 1                |
| 5. A Coy, R Nfld R, Corner Brook     | 4                |
| 6. C Coy, R Nfld R, Bell Island      | 4                |
| 7. B Coy, R Nfld R, Grand Falls      | 4                |
| 8. HQ CFS Saint John's               | 2                |
| <b>Total CFS Saint John's</b>        | <b>25</b>        |
| <u>CFB HALIFAX</u>                   |                  |
| 9. Syd Mil Dist HQ, Sydney           | 1                |
| 10. 45 Fd Sqn, Sydney                | 1                |
| 11. 2 NS Highrs, Sydney              | 4                |
| 12. Syd Mil Svc Bn, Sydney           | 1                |
| 13. 6 Med Coy, Sydney                | 0                |
| 14. A Coy, 2 NS Highrs, North Sydney | 4                |
| 15. B Coy, 2 NS Highrs, Glace Bay    | 4                |
| 16. Atl Mil Area HQ, Halifax         | 2                |
| 17. Hfx Mil Dist HQ, Halifax         | 1                |
| 18. 1 Fd Regt, Halifax               | 8                |
| 19. PL Fus, Halifax                  | 8                |
| 20. Hfx Mil Svc Bn, Halifax          | 1                |
| 21. 1 NS Highrs, New Glasgow         | 4                |
| 22. B Coy, 1 NS Highrs, Springhill   | 4                |
| 23. C Coy, 1 NS Highrs, Truro        | 4                |
| 24. D Coy, 1 NS Highrs, Amherst      | 4                |
| 25. E Coy, 1 NS Highrs, Pictou       | 4                |
| 26. HQ CFB Halifax                   | 2                |
| <b>Total CFB Halifax</b>             | <b>57</b>        |
| <u>CFB GREENWOOD</u>                 |                  |
| 27. West NSR, Aldershot              | 4                |
| 28. B Coy, West NSR, Windsor         | 4                |
| 29. D Coy, West NSR, Middleton       | 4                |
| 30. HQ CFB Greenwood                 | 2                |
| <b>Total CFB Greenwood</b>           | <b>14</b>        |

.../2

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 2 -

CFB CORNWALLIS

|                               |             |
|-------------------------------|-------------|
| 31. 84 Indep Fd Bty, Yarmouth | .....4..... |
| 32. CFRS Cornwallis           | .....2..... |
| 33. HQ CFB Cornwallis         | .....2..... |
| Total CFB Cornwallis          | .....8..... |

CFB SUMMERSIDE

|                                    |              |
|------------------------------------|--------------|
| 34. PEI Mil Dist HQ, Charlottetown | .....1.....  |
| 35. PEI Regt, Charlottetown        | .....4.....  |
| 36. C Sqn, PEI Regt, Summerside    | .....4.....  |
| 37. HQ CFB Summerside              | .....2.....  |
| Total CFB Summerside               | .....11..... |

CFB MONCTON

|                                |              |
|--------------------------------|--------------|
| 38. Met Mil Dist HQ, Moncton   | .....1.....  |
| 39. 8 CH (M), Moncton          | .....4.....  |
| 40. Met Mil Svc Bn, Moncton    | .....1.....  |
| 41. B Sqn, 8 CH (M), Sussex    | .....4.....  |
| 42. C Sqn, 8 CH (M), Sackville | .....4.....  |
| 43. HQ CFB Moncton             | .....2.....  |
| Total CFB Moncton              | .....16..... |

CFB GAGETOWN

|                                  |                          |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 44. CTC HQ                       | .....15.....             |
| 45. E Bty, 2 RCHA                | .....10.....             |
| 46. C Sqn, 8 CH                  | .....10.....             |
| 47. 2 Fd Sqn RCE                 | .....10.....             |
| 48. 3 Sigs Sqn                   | .....10.....             |
| 49. 2 RCR                        | .....50.....             |
| 50. 3 Svc Bn                     | .....15.....             |
| 51. 1 Fd Amb                     | .....2.....              |
| 52. CAS                          | 100 English, ..25 French |
| 53.                              | .....                    |
| 54. SJ Mil Dist HQ, Saint John   | .....1.....              |
| 55. 3 Fd Regt, Saint John        | .....4.....              |
| 56. SJ Mil Svc Bn, Saint John    | .....1.....              |
| 57. 89 Bty, 3 Fd Regt, Woodstock | .....4.....              |
| 58. 1 PNER, Fredericton          | .....8.....              |
| 59. A Coy, 1 RNER, Edmondston    | .....4.....              |
| 60. 422 Tac Hel Sqn              | .....1.....              |
| 61. CFB Gagetown Pool            | .....50.....             |
| Total CFB Gagetown               | 295 English, ..25 French |

CFB CHATHAM

|                                |             |
|--------------------------------|-------------|
| 62. 2 RNER, Newcastle          | .....4..... |
| 63. B Coy, 2 RNER, Bathurst    | .....4..... |
| 64. C Coy, 2 RNER, Campbellton | .....4..... |

.../3

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 3 -

|                    |         |
|--------------------|---------|
| 65. HQ CFB Chatham | .....2  |
|                    | .....14 |
| Total CFB Chatham  | .....   |

CFB VALCARTIER

|   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| 66. QG 5e G de C                            | .....15 French (F)    |
| 67. 5e RALC                                 | .....50 (F)           |
| 68. 12e RBC                                 | .....50 (F)           |
| 69. 5e EG du C                              | .....10 (F)           |
| 70. 5e ET du C                              | .....10 (F)           |
| 71. 2e R22eR                                | .....50 (F)           |
| 72. 3e R22eR                                | .....50 (F)           |
| 73. 5e Bn S du C                            | .....15 (F)           |
| 74. 5e U de SM                              | .....2 (F)            |
| 75. 5e U de CAT                             | .....1 (F)            |
| 76. 430 ETAH                                | .....1 (F)            |
| 77. QG Mil 3 Du Qué, Québec                 | .....1 (F)            |
| 78. 6 Fd Regt, Lévis                        | .....4 (F)            |
| 79. 59 Bty, 6 Fd Regt, Montmagny            | .....4 (F)            |
| 80. 58 Bty, 6 Fd Regt, Québec               | .....4 (F)            |
| 81. 10 Fd Sqn RCE, Québec                   | .....1 (F)            |
| 82. Voltigeurs, Québec                      | .....12 (F)           |
| 83. 3e Bn des S Mil, Québec                 | .....1 (F)            |
| 84. 7 Med Coy, Québec                       | .....0 (F)            |
| 85. 12e RBC (M), Trois-Rivières             | .....8 (F)            |
| 86. 62 Fd Regt, Shawinigan                  | .....8 (F)            |
| 87. Fus de St-L, Rimouski                   | .....4 (F)            |
| 88. C Coy Fus de St-L, Matane               | .....4 (F)            |
| 89. A Coy Fus de St-L, Rivière du Loup      | .....4 (F)            |
| 90. R de Chaud, Lévis                       | .....4 (F)            |
| 91. A Coy, R de Chaud, St Georges de Beauce | .....4 (F)            |
| 92. B Coy, R de Chaud, Mégantic             | .....4 (F)            |
| 93.   | .....                 |
| 94. CFB Valcartier Pool                     | .....50 (F)           |
|   | .....                 |
| Total CFB Valcartier                        | ...371 (F), 1 English |

CFB BAGOTVILLE

|                             |                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 95. 433 ET de C             | .....1 (F), 1 English |
| 96. R du Sag, Chicoutimi    | .....8 (F)            |
| 97. C Coy, R du Sag, Arvida | .....4 (F)            |
| 98. HQ CFB Bagotville       | .....2 (F)            |
|                             | .....                 |
| Total CFB Bagotville        | ...15 (F), 1 English  |

CFB MONTREAL, ST HUBERT DET

|                                |                  |
|--------------------------------|------------------|
| 99. FMC HQ Library             | 1 English, 1 (F) |
| 100. FMC HQ SO Artillery       | .....1           |
| 101. FMC HQ SO Armour          | .....1           |
| 102. FMC HQ SO Infantry        | .....1           |
| 103. FMC HQ SSO Fd Engrs       | .....1           |
| 104. FMC HQ SSO Communications | .....1           |
| 105. FMC HQ SSO Doctrine       | .....2           |

.../4

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

- 4 -

|      |           |   |
|------|-----------|---|
| 106. | HQ 10 TAG | 1 |
| 107. | 1 RSU     | 1 |
| 108. |           |   |
| 109. |           |   |
| 110. |           |   |

Total CFB St Hubert Det

10 English, 1 (F)

CFB MONTREAL

|      |                               |                  |
|------|-------------------------------|------------------|
| 111. | QG de l'Est (M), Montréal     | 2 (F), 2 English |
| 112. | QG Mil 1 du Qué, Montréal     | 2 (F)            |
| 113. | RCH, Montréal                 | 4 English        |
| 114. | B Sqn, RCH, Longueuil         | 4 English        |
| 115. | 2 Fd Regt, Montréal           | 12 English       |
| 116. | 3 Fd Engr Regt, Montréal      | 1 English        |
| 117. | 3 RHC, Montréal               | 8 English        |
| 118. | R de Mais, Montréal           | 8 (F)            |
| 119. | RMR, Montréal                 | 8 English        |
| 120. | 1er Bn des S Mil, Montréal    | 1 (F)            |
| 121. | QG Mil 2 Du Qué, Montréal     | 1 (F)            |
| 122. | Sher H, Sherbrooke            | 8 (F)            |
| 123. | 14 Indep Sig Sqn, Sherbrooke  | 1 English        |
| 124. | C GG, Montréal                | 8 English        |
| 125. | 4 R22eR, Montréal             | 4 (F)            |
| 126. | B Coy, 4 R22eR, St Jérôme     | 4 (F)            |
| 127. | 6 R22eR, St Hyacinthe         | 4 (F)            |
| 128. | B Coy, 6 R22eR, Drummondville | 4 (F)            |
| 129. | Fus MR, Montréal              | 8 (F)            |
| 130. | Fus de Sher, Sherbrooke       | 12 (F)           |
| 131. | 8 Med Coy, Sherbrooke         | 0                |
| 132. | 2e Bn des S Mil, Montréal     | 1 (F)            |
| 133. | CMR St Jean                   | 2 (F), 2 English |
| 134. | CFRS St Jean                  | 1 (F), 1 English |
| 135. | CFB Montreal Pool             | 1 (F), 1 English |

Total CFB Montreal

63 (F), 52 English

CFS VAL D'OR

|      |                       |       |
|------|-----------------------|-------|
| 136. | 9 Fd Sqn RCE, Noranda | 2 (F) |
|------|-----------------------|-------|

Total CFS Val d'Or

2 (F)

CFB KINGSTON

|      |                       |                   |
|------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 137. | 1 CDN Sig Regt        | 30                |
| 138. | CLFCSC                | 125               |
| 139. | CFSCEE                | 25 English, 5 (F) |
| 140. | Brock Rif, Brockville | 8                 |
| 141. | PWOR, Kingston        | 4                 |
| 142. | RMC                   | 2                 |
| 143. | HQ CFB Kingston       | 2                 |

Total CFB Kingston

196 English, 5 (F)

.../5

000550

RESTRICTED



RESTRICTED

|       |                                      |                  |
|-------|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| 176.  | A Sqn, QY Rang, Aurora               | .....4           |
| 177.  | 7 Tor Regt RCA, Toronto              | .....12          |
| 178.  | 2 Fd Engr Regt, Toronto              | .....1           |
| 179.  | 3 QOR of C, Toronto                  | .....8           |
| 180.  | R Regt C, Toronto                    | .....8           |
| 181.  | Lorne Scots, Brampton                | .....4           |
| 182.  | A Coy, Lorne Scots, Oakville         | .....4           |
| 183.  | C Coy, Lorne Scots, Georgetown       | .....4           |
| 184.  | 48 Highrs, Toronto                   | .....12          |
| 185.  | Tor Scot R, Toronto                  | .....8           |
| 186.  | 56 Fd Regt, Brantford                | .....4           |
| 187.  | 69 Bty, 56 Fd Regt, Simcoe           | .....4           |
| 188.  | 10 Bty, 56 Fd Regt, St Catherines    | .....4           |
| 189.  | Ham Mil Dist HQ, Hamilton            | .....1           |
| 190.  | Ham Mil Svc Bn, Hamilton             | .....1           |
| 191.  | 16 Med Coy, Hamilton                 | .....0           |
| 192.  | 11 Fd Regt, Guelph                   | .....8           |
| 193.  | Bty, 11 Fd Regt, Hamilton            | .....4           |
| 194.  | 1 Indep Sig Sqn, Hamilton            | .....1           |
| 195.  | RHLI, Hamilton                       | .....12          |
| 196.  | Linc & Welld R, St Catherines        | .....8           |
| 197.  | B Coy, Linc & Welld R, Niagara Falls | .....4           |
| 198.  | A&SH of C, Hamilton                  | .....12          |
| 199.  | CFSS, Toronto                        | .....20          |
| 200.  | 2 RSU                                | .....1           |
| 200A. | HQ CFB Toronto                       | .....2           |
|       | <b>Total CFB Toronto</b>             | <b>...179...</b> |

CFB LONDON

|      |                          |                  |
|------|--------------------------|------------------|
| 201. | 1 RCR                    | .....50          |
| 202. | Lon Mil Dist HQ, London  | .....1           |
| 203. | Lon Mil Svc Bn, London   | .....1           |
| 204. | Elgin R, St Thomas       | .....8           |
| 205. | 1 H, London              | .....4           |
| 206. | C Sqn, 1 H, Sarnia       | .....4           |
| 207. | 4 RCR, London            | .....4           |
| 208. | B Coy, 4 RCR, Stratford  | .....4           |
| 209. | HF of C, Galt            | .....4           |
| 210. | B Coy HF of C, Kitchener | .....4           |
| 211. | Win Mil Dist HQ, Windsor | .....1           |
| 212. | Win Mil Svc Bn, Windsor  | .....1           |
| 213. | Windsor R, Windsor       | .....8           |
| 214. | E&K Scot, Windsor        | .....8           |
| 215. | C Coy, E&K Scot, Chatham | .....4           |
| 216. | CFB London Pool          | .....5           |
|      | <b>Total CFB London</b>  | <b>...111...</b> |

CFB BORDEN

|      |         |        |
|------|---------|--------|
| 217. | CFSAL   | .....5 |
| 218. | CFMTC   | .....1 |
| 219. | CFNBSCS | .....1 |
| 220. | CFSIS   | .....1 |

RESTRICTED

- 7 -

|      |                               |                   |
|------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| 221. | CFSAOE                        | 20 English, 5 (F) |
| 222. |                               | .....             |
| 223. | Grey & Sim For, Owen Sound    | .....             |
| 224. | B Coy, Grey & Sim For, Barrie | .....             |
| 225. | HQ CFB Borden                 | .....             |

Total CFB Borden

38 English, 5 (F)

CFB NORTH BAY

|      |                              |       |
|------|------------------------------|-------|
| 226. | N Ont Mil Dist HQ, North Bay | ..... |
| 227. | 49 Fd Regt, Sault Ste Marie  | ..... |
| 228. | Alg R, North Bay             | ..... |
| 229. | B Coy, Alg R, Timmins        | ..... |
| 230. | 2 Ir RC, Sudbury             | ..... |
| 231. | HQ CFB North Bay             | ..... |

Total CFB North Bay

27.....

CFB WINNIPEG

|      |                               |       |
|------|-------------------------------|-------|
| 232. | Training Command Headquarters | ..... |
| 233. | 2 PPCLI                       | ..... |
| 234. | 3 RSU                         | ..... |
| 235. |                               | ..... |
| 236. | Pra Mil Area HQ, Winnipeg     | ..... |
| 237. | Wpg Mil Dist HQ, Winnipeg     | ..... |
| 238. | FGH (M), Winnipeg             | ..... |
| 239. | 116 Fd Bty, Kenora            | ..... |
| 240. | R Wpg Rif, Winnipeg           | ..... |
| 241. | Cameron's of C, Winnipeg      | ..... |
| 242. | Wpg Mil Svc Bn, Winnipeg      | ..... |
| 243. | 18 Med Coy, Winnipeg          | ..... |
| 244. | 21 Fd Sqn, Flin Flon          | ..... |
| 245. | Lake Sup Scot R, Thunder Bay  | ..... |
| 246. | 138 Coy RCASC, Thunder Bay    | ..... |
| 247. | HQ CFB Winnipeg               | ..... |

Total CFB Winnipeg

101.....

CFB PORTAGE

|      |  |       |
|------|--|-------|
| 248. | 13 Bty, 26 Fd Regt, Portage la Prairie | ..... |
| 249. | HQ CFB Portage                         | ..... |

Total CFB Portage

5.....

CFB SHILO

|      |                     |       |
|------|---------------------|-------|
| 250. | 3 RCHA              | ..... |
| 251. |                     | ..... |
| 252. | 26 Fd Regt, Brandon | ..... |
| 253. | CFB Shilo Pool      | ..... |

Total CFB Shilo

49.....

.../8

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

CFB MOOSE JAW

|       |                                |         |
|-------|--------------------------------|---------|
| 254.  | Sask Mil Dist HQ, Regina       | .....3  |
| 255.  | Indep Sqn, Sask D, Moose Jaw   | .....4  |
| 256.  | 10 Fd Regt, Regina             | .....4  |
| 257.  | 64 Bty, 10 Fd Regt, Yorkton    | .....4  |
| 258.  | N Sask R, Saskatoon            | .....8  |
| 259.  | B Coy, N Sask R, Prince Albert | .....4  |
| 260.  | Reg Mil Svc Bn, Regina         | .....3  |
| 261.  | Regina Rifles                  | .....8  |
| 261A. | HQ CFB Moose Jaw               | .....2  |
|       | Total CFB Moose Jaw            | .....40 |

CFB EDMONTON

|       |  |         |
|-------|--|---------|
| 262.  | CDN AB Regt                                | .....20 |
| 263.  | ASOTU                                      | .....1  |
| 264.  | West Det 450 Transport Helicopter Squadron | .....1  |
| 265.  | 1 FSSU                                     | .....1  |
| 266.  | 4 RSU                                      | .....4  |
| 267.  | 408 Tac Hel Sqn                            | .....1  |
| 268.  | Edn Mil Dist HQ, Edmonton                  | .....3  |
| 269.  | 20 Fd Regt, Edmonton                       | .....4  |
| 270.  | 78 Bty, 20 Fd Regt, Red Deer               | .....4  |
| 271.  | 8 Fd Engr Regt, Edmonton                   | .....1  |
| 272.  | L Edmn Regt, Edmonton                      | .....8  |
| 273.  | Edmn Mil Svc Bn, Edmonton                  | .....3  |
| 274.  | 23 Med Coy, Edmonton                       | .....0  |
| 275.  | 1 AFMS                                     | .....1  |
| 275A. | HQ CFB Edmonton                            | .....2  |
|       | Total CFB Edmonton                         | .....51 |

CFB CALGARY

|      |                                      |          |
|------|--------------------------------------|----------|
| 276. | HQ 1 Cbt Gp                          | .....15  |
| 277. | LDSH (RC)                            | .....50  |
| 278. | 1 Sigs Sqn                           | .....10  |
| 279. | 1 PPCLI                              | .....50  |
| 280. | 1 Svc Bn                             | .....15  |
| 281. | 1 CGMU                               | .....2   |
| 282. | 1 AB Med Sec                         | .....1   |
| 283. | HQ 1 TACU                            | .....1   |
| 284. |                                      | .....    |
| 285. | SA Mil Dist HQ, Calgary              | .....1   |
| 286. | SALH, Medicine Hat                   | .....8   |
| 287. | KO Calg R, Calgary                   | .....8   |
| 288. | 20 Indep Bty, 18 Fd Regt, Lethbridge | .....4   |
| 289. | Calg Highrs, Calgary                 | .....8   |
| 290. | Calg Mil Svc Bn, Calgary             | .....1   |
| 291. |                                      | .....    |
| 292. | CFB Calgary Pool                     | .....50  |
|      | Total CFB Calgary                    | .....224 |

.../9

RESTRICTED

- 9 -

CFB COLD LAKE

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| 293. 434 Tac F (OT) Sqn | 1 |
| 294.                    | 1 |
| 295. HQ CFB Cold Lake   | 1 |
| Total CFB Cold Lake     | 2 |

CFB CHILLIWACK

|                                      |                   |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 296. 3 Fd Sqn RCE                    | 10                |
| 297. CFSME                           | 2                 |
| 298. CFOCS                           | 20 English, 5 (F) |
| 299.                                 | 1                 |
| 300. Van Mil Dist HQ, Vancouver      | 1                 |
| 301. BCR, Vancouver                  | 8                 |
| 302. 15 Fd Regt, Vancouver           | 8                 |
| 303. 6 Fd Sqn, North Vancouver       | 1                 |
| 304. R Westmr R, New Westminster     | 8                 |
| 305. Seaforth of C, Vancouver        | 8                 |
| 306. Vancouver Mil Svc Bn, Vancouver | 1                 |
| 307. BCD, Kelowna                    | 4                 |
| 308. A Sqn BCD, Vernon               | 4                 |
| 309. 44 Fd Sqn, Trail                | 1                 |
| 310. B Coy, RM Rang, Revelstoke      | 4                 |
| 311. HQ CFB Chilliwack               | 2                 |
| Total CFB Chilliwack                 | 82 English, 5 (F) |

CFB ESQUIMALT

|                                     |    |
|-------------------------------------|----|
| 312. 3 PPCLI                        | 50 |
| 313. Venture Division               | 1  |
| 314. Victoria Mil Dist HQ, Victoria | 1  |
| 315. 5 (BC) Fd Bty, Victoria        | 4  |
| 316. C Scot R, Victoria             | 4  |
| 317. B Coy, C Scot R, Nanaimo       | 4  |
| 318. Victoria Mil Svc Bn, Victoria  | 1  |
| 319. Pac Mil Area HQ                | 2  |
| 319A. CFWOS                         | 2  |
| 319B. HQ CFB Esquimalt              | 2  |
| Total CFB Esquimalt                 | 71 |

CFS KAMLOOPS

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| 320. RM Rang, Kamloops | 4 |
| Total CFS Kamloops     | 4 |

CFB EUROPE

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| 321. HQ 4 CMBG    | 7 |
| 322. 1 RCHA       | 2 |
| 323. RCD          | 5 |
| 324. 4 Fd Sqn RCE | 3 |

.../10

RESTRICTED

- 10 -

- 325. 3 Cdn Mech CDO
- 326. 1 R22eR
- 327. 4 CMBG Svc En
- 328. 4 CGMU
- 329. 35 Fd Dental Unit
- 330.
- 331. CFB Europe Pool

30  
 .....  
 .....15(F)  
 .....6  
 .....2  
 .....2  
 .....  
 .....25

Total CFB Europe

85 English, 15 (F)

Sub Total English  
 Plus 20%  
 Total English

2036  
 .....  
 .....407  
 .....2443

Sub Total French  
 Plus 20%  
 Total French

507  
 .....  
 .....101  
 .....608

**RESTRICTED**

(with attachment and enclosure only) ✓

CFAD / DORL3 (DORL3)

DEPARTMENT OF NATIONAL DEFENCE



MINISTÈRE DE LA DÉFENSE NATIONALE

FMC 2900-9 DOC

0042

Mobile Command Headquarters

St Hubert, Que

3 Feb 70

|                 |         |
|-----------------|---------|
| SEARCHED        | INDEXED |
| SERIALIZED      | FILED   |
| FEB 17 1970     |         |
| File No. 2910-1 |         |
| Chg'd. to       |         |

Distribution List

CFP 301(3) LIGHT FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FINAL DRAFT

References: A. CFP 130, Art 115, para 7

B. FMC 2900-9 Doc 9 Jul 69

1. Enclosed are final draft copies of CFP 301(3) for approval, publication and translation.
2. The first draft has been seen and commented on by appropriate staff agencies at CFHQ, TCHQ and FMC HQ; CLFCSC, CFMSTC, and the concerned formations of FMC. The majority of comments received have been referred to the pertinent functional chief at FMC HQ and incorporated into the final draft. The Chief of Armour's Office has reviewed all comments concerning light armour to ensure conformity of doctrine. The articles on fire support have been checked within FMC HQ to ensure adherence to ABCA agreements and present Canadian doctrine. Section 8 of Chapter 8 on Crossing Waterways is presently being reviewed by the Chief of Engineers and the results of his review will be included before publication.
3. The format required is 8½ by 11 inches with a green vinyl cover. To reduce the size of the manual, and provide better continuity, the chapter on the light brigade group has been incorporated into other chapters. It is considered that this has resulted in a more compact manual with more emphasis on doctrine at the brigade group level.
4. The sections on psychological warfare, information services and civil affairs have been deleted. It is intended to include this information in a revised CFP 165, Conduct of Land Operations. As a result of comments, consideration is being given to deleting all or part of Chapters 11 and 12 on special operations and special environments. If deleted, the information contained in these two chapters will be included in the revised CFP 165 and in any environmental manuals which may have to be written. Comments would be appreciated on this proposal with recommendations as to which sections, if any, should be retained.
5. Attached at Annex A is the distribution list for the manual. The totals of 1602 English and 440 French copies reflect the requirements of TC and FMC plus a 20% reserve. Totals do not reflect CFSC, CLFCSC, CFSS, CFCS, MA, CLOs, Reserves, or the needs of other commands.

*PD to file*  
*Copy retained for action by DORL 2-2* .../2  
*Manuals held by DORL 2-2*  
*Printed by*  
**DORL 2-2**  
*11 Feb 70*

**RESTRICTED**

(with attachment and enclosure only)

RESTRICTED

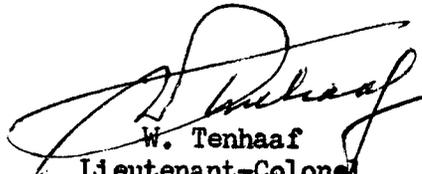
(with attachment and enclosure only)

-2-

6. The requirement for 440 French copies must be filled by an equal number of English copies should translation entail a long delay.

7. Action addressees are requested to review the final draft and submit their comments to Mobile Command Headquarters, Attention, SSO Doctrine by 1 Apr 70. Information addressees, if they have any comments, are requested to submit them by the same date.

8. DGOPSL (DORL 2) is requested to withhold approval until final corrections are forwarded by May 70, and PUBS need not start typesetting until approval is received from DGOPSL.

  
W. Tenhaaf  
Lieutenant-Colonel  
for Commander Mobile Command

DISTRIBUTION LIST

ACTION

INFORMATION

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| CFHQ: DGOPSL (DORL 2) | 2 |
| DGITP                 |   |
| DBPI                  | 3 |
| PUBS                  | 2 |
| 1 CBT GP              | 2 |
| 2 CBT GP              | 2 |
| 3 CBT GP              | 2 |
| 5e G de C             | 2 |
| CDN AB REGT           | 2 |
| CLFCSC                | 2 |

|             |
|-------------|
| D COMD **   |
| COS O&T **  |
| COS P&R *   |
| COS ADM *   |
| C ARTY *    |
| C ARMOUR *  |
| C INF *     |
| C ENGR *    |
| C TAC AVN * |
| C COMM *    |
| SSO PROG ** |

\* less Annex A  
\*\* less manual and Annex A

RESTRICTED

(with attachment and enclosure only)

RESTRICTED

ANNEX A  
 to FMC 2900-9 DOC  
 dated 3 Feb 70

INITIAL DISTRIBUTION

CFP 301(3) LIGHT FORMATIONS IN

BATTLE                      FINAL DRAFT

| <u>Formation/Unit</u>                       | <u>No of Copies</u>            |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <u>CFB Montreal - St Hubert Det</u>         |                                |
| 1. FMC HQ Library                           | 1 English 1 French             |
| 2. FMC HQ C Armd                            | 1                              |
| 3. FMC HQ C Arty                            | 1                              |
| 4. FMC HQ C Engr                            | 1                              |
| 5. FMC HQ C Comms                           | 1                              |
| 6. FMC HQ C Inf                             | 1                              |
| 7. FMC HQ C Tac Avn                         | 1                              |
| 8. FMC HQ SSO Doc                           | 2                              |
| 9.  |                                |
| 10.   |                                |
| 11. HQ 10 TAG                               | 2                              |
| 12. 429 Tactical Transport Squadron         | 1                              |
| 13. 450 Heavy Helicopter Transport Squadron | 1                              |
| 14.   |                                |
| 15.   |                                |
| 16. CFB Montreal St Hubert Det              | 0                              |
| <b>Total CFB Montreal St Hubert Det</b>     | <b>13 English<br/>1 French</b> |
| <u>CFB Soest</u>                            |                                |
| 17. HQ 4 CMBG                               | 7                              |
| 18. 1 RCHA                                  | 5                              |
| 19. LISH (RC)                               | 5                              |
| 20. C Sqn 8 CH                              | 3                              |
| 21. 1 SSM Bty RCA                           | 3                              |
| 22. 4 Fd Sqn RCE                            | 3                              |
| 23. 2 RCR                                   | 5                              |
| 24. 2 PFCLI                                 | 5                              |
| 25. 1 R 22e R                               | 5 French                       |
| 26. 4 CMBG Svc Bn                           | 6                              |
| 27. 4 Fd Amb                                | 3                              |
| 28. 4 Fd Dental Coy                         | 1                              |
| 29. CFB Soest Pool                          | 25                             |
| <b>Total CFB Soest</b>                      | <b>71 English<br/>5 French</b> |
| <u>CFB Gagetown</u>                         |                                |
| 30. HQ 3 Cbt Gp                             | 15                             |
| 31. 2 RCHA                                  | 50                             |

RESTRICTED

.../2

| <u>Formation/Unit</u>        | <u>No of Copies</u> |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| 32. RCD                      | 50                  |
| 33. 2 Fd Sqn RCE             | 10                  |
| 34. 3 Sigs Sqn               | 10                  |
| 35. 1 RHC                    | 50                  |
| 36. 2 RHC                    | 50                  |
| 37. 3 Svc Bn                 | 50                  |
| 38.                          |                     |
| 39. CFB Gagetown Pool        | 25                  |
|                              | <hr/>               |
| Total CFB Gagetown           | 310                 |
| <br><u>CFB Valcartier</u>    |                     |
| 40. QG 5e G de C             | 15 French           |
| 41. 5e RALC                  | 50 French           |
| 42. 12e RBC                  | 50 French           |
| 43. 5e EG du C               | 10 French           |
| 44. 5e ET du C               | 10 French           |
| 45. 2e R 22e R               | 50 French           |
| 46. 3e R 22e R               | 50 French           |
| 47. 5e Bn S du C             | 50 French           |
| 48. 5e U de SM               | 15 French           |
| 49. 1 Commando (CDN AB Regt) | 10 French           |
| 50.                          |                     |
| 51. CFB Valcartier Pool      | 25 French           |
|                              | <hr/>               |
| Total CFB Valcartier         | 335 French          |
| <br><u>CFB Petawawa</u>      |                     |
| 52. HQ 2 Cbt Gp              | 15                  |
| 53. 4 RCHA                   | 50                  |
| 54. 8 CH                     | 50                  |
| 55. 1 Fd Sqn RCE             | 10                  |
| 56. 2 Sigs Sqn               | 10                  |
| 57. 2 CDN GDS                | 50                  |
| 58. 2 Svc Bn                 | 50                  |
| 59. 8 Tactical Air Wing HQ   | 1                   |
| 60. 403 Helicopter OTS       | 1                   |
| 61.                          |                     |
| 62. CFB Petawawa Pool        | 25                  |
|                              | <hr/>               |
| Total CFB Petawawa           | 262                 |
| <br><u>CFB Calgary</u>       |                     |
| 63. HQ 1 Cbt Gp              | 15                  |
| 64. FGH                      | 50                  |
| 65. 1 Sigs Sqn               | 10                  |
| 66. 1 PPCLI                  | 50                  |

| <u>Formation/Unit</u>                                | <u>No of Copies</u> |
|--|---------------------|
| 67. 1 Svc Bn   | 50                  |
| 68. 3 Fd Amb   | 10                  |
| 69. 1 AB Med Sec                                     | 5                   |
| 70.  |                     |
| 71. CFB Calgary Pool                                 | 25                  |
| <u>Total CFB Calgary</u>                             |                     |
|  | 215                 |
| <u>CFB Edmonton</u>                                  |                     |
| 72. CDN AB Regt (-)                                  | 20                  |
| 73. West Det 429 Tactical Transport Squadron         | 1                   |
| 74. West Det 450 Heavy Transport Helicopter Squadron | 1                   |
| 75. 1 FSSU   | 1                   |
| 76.  |                     |
| 77. CFB Edmonton Pool                                | 0                   |
| <u>Total CFB Edmonton</u>                            |                     |
|  | 23                  |
| <u>CFB Winnipeg</u>                                  |                     |
| 78. 3 RCHA   | 50                  |
| 79. Training Command Headquarters                    | 2                   |
| 80.  |                     |
| 81. CFB Winnipeg Pool                                | 0                   |
| <u>Total CFB Winnipeg</u>                            |                     |
|  | 52                  |
| <u>CFB Chilliwack</u>                                |                     |
| 82. 3 Fd Sqn RCE                                     | 10                  |
| 83. <del>RCSME</del> CFSME                           | 2                   |
| 84. Officer Cadet Squadron                           | 2                   |
| 85. CFB Chilliwack Pool                              | 0                   |
| <u>Total CFB Chilliwack</u>                          |                     |
|  | 14                  |
| <u>CFB Esquimalt</u>                                 |                     |
| 86. 1 QOR of C                                       | 50                  |
| 87. Venture Division                                 | 2                   |
| 88. CFB Esquimalt Pool                               | 0                   |
| <u>Total CFB Esquimalt</u>                           |                     |
|  | 52                  |
| <u>CFB Kingston</u>                                  |                     |
| 89. 1 CDN Sig Regt                                   | 30                  |
| 90. <del>RCSMEX</del> CFSCLOE                        | 100                 |
| 91. <del>RCSMEX (S)</del>                            |                     |

.../4

RESTRICTED

-4-

| <u>Formation/Unit</u>                   | <u>No of Copies</u>      |
|---|--------------------------|
| 92.                                     |                          |
| 93. CFB Kingston Pool                   | 0                        |
|   | <hr/>                    |
| Total CFB Kingston                      | 130                      |
| <br><u>CFB London</u>                   |                          |
| 94. 1 RCR                               | 50                       |
| 95.                                     |                          |
| 96. CFB London Pool                     | 0                        |
|   | <hr/>                    |
| Total CFB London                        | 50                       |
| <br><u>CFB Borden</u>                   |                          |
| 97. CAS                                 | 100 English, 25 French   |
| 98. CFSAL                               | 5                        |
| 99. CFMTC                               | 1                        |
| 100. CFNBCS                             | 1                        |
| 101. CFSIS                              | 2                        |
| 102. TEE Armoured Section               | 1                        |
| 103. TEE Infantry Section               | 1                        |
| 104. TEE NBCW Section                   | 1                        |
| 105.                                    |                          |
| 106. CFB Borden Pool                    | 0                        |
|   | <hr/>                    |
| Total CFB Borden                        | 112 English<br>25 French |
| <br><u>CFB Shilo</u>                    |                          |
| CFSA                                    |                          |
| 107. <del>RCSA</del>                    | 20                       |
| 108. 1 Drone Tp                         | 2                        |
| 109. TEE Artillery Section              | 1                        |
| 110.                                    |                          |
| 111. CFB Shilo Pool                     | 0                        |
|   | <hr/>                    |
| Total CFB Shilo                         | 23                       |
| <br><u>CFB Rivers</u>                   |                          |
| 112. <del>Airborne School</del> ASOTU   | 6                        |
| 113. <del>Tac Air Support School</del>  |                          |
| 114. <del>TEE Artillery Section</del>   |                          |
| 115. Air Sp Signal Troop                | 1                        |
| 116. 408 Tac Sp RCCE Sqn                | 1                        |
| 117. CFB Rivers Pool                    | 0                        |
|   | <hr/>                    |
| Total CFB Rivers                        | 8                        |
| <br><u>MUSCELLANEOUS</u> CFB Bagotville |                          |
| 118. 433e ETAC                          | 1 French                 |
|   | <hr/>                    |
| Total CFB Bagotville                    | 1 French                 |
|   | .../5                    |

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

-5-

Formation/Unit

No of Copies

119.  
120.  
121.  
122.  
123.

Sub Total English  
Plus 20%  
Total English

1335  
267  
1602

Sub Total French  
Plus 20%  
Total French

367  
73  
440

RESTRICTED

000563

MEMORANDUM

*CRPA*  
V 2900-4 (DORL 2)

15 January, 1970

CFHQ Pubs  
Ogilvy Annex

CFP 301(2) MECHANIZED FORMATIONS IN BATTLE DISTRIBUTION

Reference: A. HQ FMC letter FMC 2900-17 DOC of 19 August, 1969.

1. Reference A advised distribution of CFP 301(2) Mechanized Formations in Battle to units within Mobile and Training Commands.
2. This memorandum sets out the distribution to Canadian Forces Colleges and to Regional Headquarters for units of the Militia.
3. Distribution of CFP 301(2) is to be in accordance with Annex A to Reference A with the following additions:

a. CFB Valcartier

Add Serial 51a - HQ Quebec Region - 8 Fr 3 Eng  
(For Militia Units)

b. CFB Winnipeg

Add Serial 81a - HQ Prairie Region - 7  
(For Militia Units)

c. CFB Chilliwack

Add Serial 85a - HQ Pacific Region - 4  
(For Militia Units)

d. CFB Esquimalt

Add Serial 88a - RRMC - 1

e. CFB Kingston

Add Serial 93a - CLFCSC - 125  
93b - RMC - 2

f. Under Miscellaneous, add:

Serial 118 - CFB Toronto - CFSC - 20  
Serial 119 - CFB Toronto - HQ Ontario Region - 20  
(For Militia Units)  
Serial 120 - CFB St Jean - CMR - 2 Fr 2 Eng  
Serial 121 - CFB Halifax - HQ Atlantic Region - 8  
(For Militia Units)

.../2

4. Total requirements are now as follows:

a. English

|               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| Sub Total     | 935        |
| Plus 20%      | <u>186</u> |
| Total English | 1121       |

b. French

|              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| Sub Total    | 91        |
| Plus 20%     | <u>19</u> |
| Total French | 110       |

  
W.K. Lye  
Brigadier Genreal  
DGOFSL

R.T. Middleton, MAJ/2-4138/vp

DEPARTMENT OF NATIONAL DEFENCE



MINISTÈRE DE LA DÉFENSE NATIONALE

FMC 2900-4700/00 DOC  
FMC 2900-15 DOC

Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, Que

14 Sep 69

|             |                      |
|-------------|----------------------|
| Returned to | DORL 2               |
| File No     | NCT 2 1969<br>3900-1 |
| Chg'd. to   |                      |

Distribution List

CFP 301(2) MECHANIZED FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FINAL DRAFT - CORRECTIONS

Reference: A. FMC 2900-4700/00 DOC over 2900-15 DOC of 19 Aug 69

1. Enclosed is an amended copy of the final draft of the m/n publication.
2. It will be noted that amendments to the text are entered in red and those for figures are in black.
3. Amendments are made on pages: ~~six, 2-2 (Figure 2-1), 3-8, 4-4, 4-7, 3-11, 3-12, 2-8 (Figure 2-4), 6-9, 9-8, 9-5A, (Figure 9-3), 9-11, 9-31, 3-5 and 3-6.~~

*for* *St Hubert* *Bben*  
 for G.A. Turcot  
 Lieutenant General  
 Commander Mobile Command

DISTRIBUTION LIST

CFHQ: → DORL 2  
PUBS  
DBPI

*PA*  
 Amendments made  
 to copy held by  
*Committee*  
 DORL 2-2  
 20 Jan 70

RESTRICTED  
(with attachment)

DEPARTMENT OF NATIONAL DEFENCE



MINISTÈRE DE LA DÉFENSE NATIONALE

FMC 2900-1700/00 DOC  
2900-15

Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, Quebec  
19 Aug 69

Distribution List

CFP 301(2) MECHANIZED FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FINAL DRAFT

Reference: A. CFP 130 Article 115, para 7

1. Enclosed are final draft copies of CFP 301(2), submitted for approval and publication.
2. The manual has been seen and commented on by TCHQ, CAS, 4 CMBG, 3 CBT GP, CLFCSC, the functional chiefs and other agencies.
3. It is requested that the manual be produced in green vinyl cover with chicago screws for 8½ inch by 11 inch paper.
4. CLFCSC and 4 CMBG have been requested to comment on the final draft. Minor changes resulting from any comments will be forward to CFHQ, PUBS by 17 Sep 69.
5. Attached at Annex A is the distribution list.

A handwritten signature in dark ink, appearing to read 'G.A. Turcot', written over a printed name and title.  
G.A. Turcot  
Lieutenant General  
Commander Mobile Command

DISTRIBUTION LIST

(overleaf)

RESTRICTED  
(with attachments)

000567

DISTRIBUTION LIST

ACTION

INFORMATION

EXTERNAL

INTERNAL

|                                |          |                           |
|--------------------------------|----------|---------------------------|
| CFHQ: DORL 2                   |          |                           |
| PUBS (plus two copies Annex A) | D COMD   | (less manual and Annex A) |
| DBPI (less Annex A)            | COS O&T  | (less manual and Annex A) |
|                                | C ARMOUR | (less manual and Annex A) |
|                                | C ARTY   | (less manual and Annex A) |
|                                | C INF    | (less manual and Annex A) |
|                                | SSO PROG | (less manual and Annex A) |

ANNEX A  
 to FMC

2900-4700/00 DOC  
 2900-15

INITIAL DISTRIBUTION

CFP 301(2) MECHANIZED FORMATIONS

IN BATTLE

| <u>Formation/Unit</u>                       | <u>No of Copies</u>              |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <u>CFB St Hubert</u>                        |                                  |
| 1. FMC HQ Library                           | 2                                |
| 2. FMC HQ C Armd                            | 1                                |
| 3. FMC HQ C Arty                            | 1                                |
| 4. FMC HQ C Engr                            | 1                                |
| 5. FMC HQ C Comms                           | 1                                |
| 6. FMC HQ C Inf                             | 1                                |
| 7. FMC HQ C Tac Avn                         | 1                                |
| 8. FMC HQ SSO Doc                           | 2                                |
| 9.  |                                  |
| 10.   |                                  |
| 11. HQ 10 TAG                               | 1                                |
| 12. 429 Tactical Transport Squadron         | 1                                |
| 13. 450 Heavy Helicopter Transport Squadron | 1                                |
| 14.   |                                  |
| 15.   |                                  |
| 16. CFB St Hubert Pool                      | 0                                |
| <b>Total CFB St Hubert</b>                  | <b>13</b>                        |
| <u>CFB Soest</u>                            |                                  |
| 17. HQ 4 CMBG                               | 20                               |
| 18. 1 RCHA                                  | 20                               |
| 19. LdSH (RC)                               | 15                               |
| 20. C Sqn 8 CH                              | 6                                |
| 21. 1 SSM Bty RCA                           | 5                                |
| 22. 4 Fd Sqn RCE                            | 6                                |
| 23. 2 RCR                                   | 15                               |
| 24. 2 PICLI                                 | 15                               |
| 25. 1 R 22e R                               | 15 French                        |
| 26. 4 CMBG Svc Bn                           | 20                               |
| 27. 4 Fd Amb                                | 3                                |
| 28. 4 Fd Dental Coy                         | 1                                |
| 29. CFB Soest Pool                          | 25                               |
| <b>Total CFB Soest</b>                      | <b>151 English<br/>15 French</b> |
| <u>CFB Gagetown</u>                         |                                  |
| 30. HQ 3 Cbt Gp                             | 5                                |
| 31. 2 RCHA                                  | 4                                |

.../2

| <u>Formation/Unit</u>                    | <u>No of Copies</u> |
|--|---------------------|
| 32. RCD                                  | 4                   |
| 33. 2 Fd Sqn RCE                         | 3                   |
| 34. 3 Sigs Sqn                           | 3                   |
| 35. 1 RHC                                | 5                   |
| 36. 2 RHC                                | 5                   |
| 37. 3 Svc Bn                             | 5                   |
| 38.                                      |                     |
| 39. CFB Gagetown Pool                    | <u>25</u>           |
| <b>Total CFB Gagetown</b>                | <b>59</b>           |
| <u>CFB Valcartier</u>                    |                     |
| 40. QG 5e G de C                         | 5                   |
| 41. 5e RALC                              | 4                   |
| 42. 12e RBC                              | 4                   |
| 43. 5e EG du C                           | 3                   |
| 44. 5e ET du C                           | 3                   |
| 45. 2e R 22e R                           | 5                   |
| 46. 3e R 22e R                           | 5                   |
| 47. 5e Bn S du C                         | 5                   |
| 48. 5e U de SM                           | 3                   |
| 49. 1 Commando (CDN AB Regt)             | 4                   |
| 50.                                      |                     |
| 51. CFB Valcartier Pool                  | <u>25</u>           |
| 51a HQ Quebec Region (For Militia Units) | 8 French 3 English  |
| <b>Total CFB Valcartier</b>              | <b>66 French</b>    |
|  | <b>74</b>           |
| <u>CFB Petawawa</u>                      |                     |
| 52. HQ 2 Cbt Gp                          | 5                   |
| 53. 4 RCHA                               | 4                   |
| 54. 8 CH                                 | 4                   |
| 55. 1 Fd Sqn RCE                         | 3                   |
| 56. 2 Sigs Sqn                           | 3                   |
| 57. 2 CDN GDS                            | 5                   |
| 58. 2 Svc Bn                             | 5                   |
| 59. 8 Tactical Air Wing HQ               | 1                   |
| 60. 403 Helicopter OTS                   | 1                   |
| 61.                                      |                     |
| 62. CFB Petawawa Pool                    | <u>25</u>           |
| <b>Total CFB Petawawa</b>                | <b>56</b>           |
| <u>CFB Calgary</u>                       |                     |
| 63. HQ 1 Cbt Gp                          | 5                   |
| 64. FGH                                  | 4                   |
| 65. 1 Sigs Sqn                           | 3                   |
| 66. 1 PFCLI                              | 5                   |

| <u>Formation/Unit</u>                                | <u>No of Copies</u> |
|--|---------------------|
| 67. 1 Svc Bn   | 5                   |
| 68. 3 Fd Amb   | 3                   |
| 69. 1 AB Med Sec                                     | 1                   |
| 70.  |                     |
| 71. CFB Calgary Pool                                 | <u>25</u>           |
| Total CFB Calgary                                    | 51                  |
| <u>CFB Edmonton</u>                                  |                     |
| 72. CDN AB Regt (-)                                  | 4                   |
| 73. West Det 429 Tactical Transport Squadron         | 1                   |
| 74. West Det 450 Heavy Transport Helicopter Squadron | 1                   |
| 75. 1 FSSU   | 1                   |
| 76.  |                     |
| 77. CFB Edmonton Pool                                | <u>0</u>            |
| Total CFB Edmonton                                   | 7                   |
| <u>CFB Winnipeg</u>                                  |                     |
| 78. 3 RCHA   | 4                   |
| 79. Training Command Headquarters                    | 2                   |
| 80.  |                     |
| 81. CFB Winnipeg Pool                                | <u>0</u>            |
| 81a HQ Prairie Region (For militia Units)            | <u>7</u>            |
| Total CFB Winnipeg                                   | 613                 |
| <u>CFB Chilliwack</u>                                |                     |
| 82. 3 Fd Sqn RCE                                     | 3                   |
| 83. RCSME  | 2                   |
| 84.  |                     |
| 85. CFB Chilliwack Pool                              | <u>0</u>            |
| 85a HQ Pacific Region (For militia Units)            | <u>4</u>            |
| Total CFB Chilliwack                                 | 59                  |
| <u>CFB Esquimalt</u>                                 |                     |
| 86. 1 QOR of C                                       | 5                   |
| 87.  |                     |
| 88. CFB Esquimalt Pool                               | <u>0</u>            |
| 88a RRCME  | <u>1</u>            |
| Total CFB Esquimalt                                  | 6                   |
| <u>CFB Kingston</u>                                  |                     |
| 89. 1 CDN Sig Regt                                   | 5                   |
| 90. RCS of S   | 80                  |
| 91. RCEME (S)  | 31                  |

| <u>Formation/Unit</u>       | <u>No of Copies</u> |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| 92.                         |                     |
| 93. CFB Kingston Pool       | 0                   |
| 93a CLFCSC                  | 125                 |
| 93b RMC                     | <del>116</del>      |
| Total CFB Kingston          | 2                   |
| <u>CFB London</u>           | <u>243</u>          |
| 94. 1 RCR                   | 5                   |
| 95.                         |                     |
| 96. CFB London Pool         | 0                   |
| Total CFB London            | 5                   |
| <u>CFB Borden</u>           |                     |
| 97. CAS                     | 100                 |
| 98. CFSAL                   | 5                   |
| 99. CFMTC                   | 1                   |
| 100. CFNBCS                 | 1                   |
| 101. CFSIS                  | 2                   |
| 102. TEE Armoured Section   | 1                   |
| 103. TEE Infantry Section   | 1                   |
| 104. TEE NBCW Section       | 1                   |
| 105.                        |                     |
| 106. CFB Borden Pool        | 0                   |
| Total CFB Borden            | 112                 |
| <u>CFB Shilo</u>            |                     |
| 107. RCSA                   | 150                 |
| 108. 1 Drone Tp             | 1                   |
| 109. TEE Artillery Section  | 1                   |
| 110.                        |                     |
| 111. CFB Shilo Pool         | 0                   |
| Total CFB Shilo             | 152                 |
| <u>CFB Rivers</u>           |                     |
| 112. Airborne School        | 1                   |
| 113. Tac Air Support School | 1                   |
| 114. TEE AB Section         | 1                   |
| 115. Air Sp Signal Troop    | 1                   |
| 116. 408 Tac Sp RCCE Sqn    | 1                   |
| 117. CFB Rivers Pool        | 0                   |
| Total CFB Rivers            | 5                   |
| <u>Miscellaneous</u>        |                     |
| 118. CFB Toronto - CFSC     | 20                  |
|                             | .../5               |

Formation/Unit

No of Copies

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| 119. CFB Toronto - HQ Ontario Region (For Militia Units)                | 20            |
| 120. CFB St Jean - CMR  | 2 Eng 2 Fr    |
| 121. CFB Halifax - HQ Atlantic Region (For Militia Units)               | 8             |
| 122. <del>CFB</del> <del>Reserve</del> - <del>DATE</del> (Militia Post) | <del>20</del> |
| 123.  |               |

|                   |            |            |    |
|-------------------|------------|------------|----|
| Sub Total English | 743        | 935        | 93 |
| Plus 20%          | <u>149</u> | <u>186</u> |    |
| Total English     | 892        | 1121       |    |

|                  |           |           |
|------------------|-----------|-----------|
| Sub Total French | 81        | 91        |
| Plus 20%         | <u>16</u> | <u>19</u> |
| Total French     | 97        | 110       |

DEPARTMENT OF NATIONAL DEFENCE



MINISTÈRE DE LA DÉFENSE NATIONALE

FMC 2900-9 DOC

Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, Que  
09 Jul 69

Distribution List

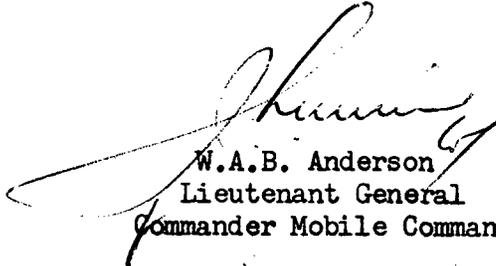
LAND/TACTICAL AIR TRAINING PUBLICATIONS  
CFP 301(3) LIGHT FORMATIONS IN BATTLE  
FIRST DRAFT

|             |                          |
|-------------|--------------------------|
| Referred to | DORL                     |
| File No     | 1111 17 1969<br>✓ 2900-4 |
| Chg d. to   | DORL3                    |

70/7/69

Reference: A. FMC 2900-4700/00 DOC 24 Nov 68 ✓

1. Addressees are requested to examine the enclosed first draft of CFP 301(3), and to submit their comments to this headquarters, attention Doctrine Section by not later than 15 Sep 69.
2. It is requested that comments be made in the context of the preface, and aim and scope. Comments should include alternative proposals where there is disagreement over subject matter. Editorial comments are expected to be made by CFHQ/PUBS.
3. Nil returns are not required. Non-receipt of comment by the listed date will be taken as acquiescence.
4. It is intended to use the 8½ X 11 inch format with green vinyl cover. Comments are invited on this aspect.
5. The proposed distribution within Mobile Command, on which comments are also invited, is:
  - a. Light formations units - Scale D;
  - b. Mechanized formations and other land units - Scale B; and
  - c. FMC HQ and tactical air units - Scale A.
6. A French translation is required as soon as possible, but the issue of the English version must proceed undelayed.
7. Attached is a sample Comment Sheet. Addressees are requested to submit their comments by completing columns a to d inclusive on locally reproduced sheets.

  
W.A.B. Anderson  
Lieutenant General  
Commander Mobile Command

-2-

DISTRIBUTION LIST

EXTERNAL

ACTION

CFHQ: DGOPSL (2)  
PUBS (1)  
DGITP (2)  
DBPI (1)

TCHQ

CAS

1 CBT GP (5)

2 CBT GP (5)

3 CBT GP (5)

5e G de C (5)

CLFCSC

CFMSTC

TEES CFNBCS

INTERNAL

ACTION

COMD - 10 TAG

COS P&R (2)

COS ADM (for D COS LOG, SSO TN,  
SSO MAINT, D COS PERS) (4)

COMD SURG

D COS TRG

D COS OPS (for SSO P&O, SSO INT) (2)

C ARMOUR

C ARTY

C ENGR

C COMM

C INF

C TAC AVN

INFORMATION

COMD

D COMD OPS

D COMD ADM

COMMENTS ON WRITING PLAN/FIRST DRAFT/FINAL DRAFT  
OF

| SERIAL<br><br>(a) | SOURCE OF COMMENT & FILE REF<br><br>(b) | REFERENCE<br>(Page, art, etc)<br><br>(c) | COMMENTS<br><br>(d) | OPINION OF THE AUTHOR<br><br>(e) | DECISION<br><br>(f) |
|-------------------|---|--|---------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|
|                   |   |  |                     |                                  |                     |

DEPARTMENT OF NATIONAL DEFENCE



CANADA

MINISTÈRE DE LA DÉFENSE NATIONALE

FMC 2900-4700/00 DOC

Mobile Command Headquarters  
St Hubert, Que  
14 Jan 69

21017 P

①

Distribution List

LAND FORCES TRAINING PUBLICATIONS  
CFP 301(2) MECHANIZED DIVISION IN BATTLE  
FIRST DRAFT

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| Referred to | <i>Doops</i>     |
| File No.    | <i>V 2910-1</i>  |
| Chgd. to    | <i>Deums 3-4</i> |

Reference: A. FMC 2900-4700/00 DOC of 24 Nov 68  
(not distributed to CLFCSC)

1. Comments are requested on the enclosed draft manual and should be forwarded to reach this headquarters, attention Doctrine Section, by 17 Feb 69.
2. Addressees are asked to make a critical review of the tactical doctrine and procedures which are presented in the manual. Comments should be specific and, where necessary, accompanied by alternative proposals. It should be noted that:
  - a. Subsequent tactical manuals at the unit level will be based on the doctrine set out in CFP 301(2); they will also conform in presentation and format.
  - b. A factor in the preparation of CFP 301(2) is the requirement for inter-operability with UK and US formations; another consideration is the need to avoid drastic departure from established procedures and terminology upon which training has been based over past years.
  - c. Editorial changes, minor alterations in sentence structure, punctuation and spelling corrections are expected to be carried out by the Publications Section at CFHQ; other addressees need not be concerned with this aspect.

*Att  
Arde*

*for W.A.B. Anderson*  
W.A.B. Anderson  
Lieutenant General  
Commander Mobile Command

DISTRIBUTION LIST

(overleaf)

②  
*Seen AM*

*McCommand*

DISTRIBUTION LIST

EXTERNAL

ACTION

CFHQ: DGOPSL (2)  
      PUBS (2)

TCHQ

CAS

4 CMBG (3)

3 CBT GP

CLFCSC

CFMSTC

TEES CFMBCS

INTERNAL

ACTION

COS P&R (2)

COS ADM (for DCOS LOG  
          SSO MAINT  
          DCOS PERS (3))

COMD SURG

DCOS TRG

DCOS OPS (for SSO P&C  
          SSO INT (2))

C ARMOUR

C ARTY

C ENGR

C COMM

C INF

C TAC AVN

INFORMATION

COMD

D COMD ADM